

Stellenbosch Papers in Linguistics, Vol. 6, 1981, 01-398 doi: 10.5774/6-0-116

GENERALIZATIONS ABOUT SYNTHETIC COMPOUNDING
IN AFRIKAANS

Thereza Botha
University of Stellenbosch

STELLENBOSCH PAPERS IN LINGUISTICS

NUMBER 6

1981

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The research of which this paper is the result was made possible by a grant from the University of Stellenbosch. To them I express my sincere gratitude.

I would also like to thank a number of people who have assisted in the preparation of the manuscript: Prof. R.P. Botha for his help and supervision during the research; Cecile le Roux for her assistance with the glosses; and finally Mrs. L. Gildenhuys for her patience in typing the manuscript.

T.B.

Stellenbosch
July 1981

(ii)

CONTENTS

	Page
Acknowledgments	(i)
1. Introduction	1
2. Some verbal compounds	3
2.1 Category I: Zero-morph verbs	6
2.1.1 Tables	6
2.1.2 Generalizations	11
2.1.2.1 Generalizations regarding the incorporation of syntactic categories	11
2.1.2.2 Generalizations regarding the incorporation of grammatical functions	11
2.1.2.3 Generalizations regarding structural adjacency	11
2.1.2.4 Generalizations regarding the incorporation of thematic relations	12
2.1.2.5 Generalizations regarding string adjacency	13
2.1.3 Some verbs	13
2.1.3.1 <i>bak</i> ("bake")	13
2.1.3.2 <i>braai</i> ("grill/roast/toast")	25
2.1.3.3 <i>dra</i> ("carry")	36
2.1.3.4 <i>dra</i> ("bear")	47
2.1.3.5 <i>drink</i> ("drink")	57
2.1.3.6 <i>lees</i> ("read")	68
2.1.3.7 <i>praat</i> ("talk"/"speak")	80
2.1.3.8 <i>rook</i> ("smoke")	92
2.2 Category II: Intransitive verbs	103
2.2.1 Tables	103
2.2.2 Generalizations	108
2.2.2.1 Generalizations regarding the incorporation of syntactic categories	108
2.2.2.2 Generalizations regarding the incorporation of grammatical functions	108
2.2.2.3 Generalizations regarding structural adjacency	109
2.2.2.4 Generalizations regarding the incorporation of thematic relations	110
2.2.2.5 Generalizations regarding string adjacency	111
2.2.3 Some verbs	111
2.2.3.1 Intransitive verbs + "bare" object	111
2.2.3.1.1 <i>dans</i> ("dance")	111
2.2.3.1.2 <i>groei</i> ("grow")	123
2.2.3.1.3 <i>loop</i> ("walk")	135
2.2.3.1.4 <i>skaats</i> ("skate")	148
2.2.3.1.5 <i>slaap</i> ("sleep")	161
2.2.3.1.6 <i>staan</i> ("stand")	173
2.2.3.1.7 <i>werk</i> ("work")	185

(iii)

2.2.3.2	Intransitive verbs without "object"	198
2.2.3.2.1	<i>pyn</i> ("ache")	198
2.2.3.2.2	<i>rook</i> ("smoke")	208
2.3	Category III: Optional double object verbs	218
2.3.1	Tables	219
2.3.2	Generalizations	224
2.3.2.1	Generalizations regarding the incorporation of syntactic categories	224
2.3.2.2	Generalizations regarding the incorporation of grammatical functions	224
2.3.2.3	Generalizations regarding structural adjacency	225
2.3.2.4	Generalizations regarding the incorporation of thematic relations	226
2.3.2.5	Generalizations regarding string adjacency	226
2.3.3	Some verbs	227
2.3.3.1	Dative Movement verbs	227
2.3.3.1.1	<i>skenk</i> ("give")	227
2.3.3.1.2	<i>stuur</i> ("send")	239
2.3.3.2	Non-Dative Movement verbs	250
2.3.3.2.1	<i>koop</i> ("buy")	250
2.3.3.2.2	<i>vertaal</i> ("translate")	260
2.3.3.3	Complex Dative Movement verbs	270
2.3.3.3.1	<i>skryf</i> ("write")	270
2.3.3.3.2	<i>vertel</i> ("tell")	281
2.4	Category IV: Obligatory transitive verbs with one object ...	292
2.4.1	Tables	292
2.4.2	Generalizations	297
2.4.2.1	Generalizations regarding the incorporation of syntactic categories	297
2.4.2.2	Generalizations regarding the incorporation of grammatical functions	297
2.4.2.3	Generalizations regarding structural adjacency	298
2.4.2.4	Generalizations regarding the incorporation of thematic relations	298
2.4.2.5	Generalizations regarding string adjacency	299
2.4.3	Some verbs	299
2.4.3.1	<i>besit</i> ("own")	299
2.4.3.2	<i>besoek</i> ("visit")	310
2.4.3.3	<i>breek</i> ("break")	320
2.4.3.4	<i>dra</i> ("wear")	331
2.4.3.5	<i>jaag</i> ("chase")	341
2.4.3.6	<i>ken</i> ("know") (= "to be knowledgeable about")	351
2.4.3.7	<i>maak</i> ("make")	361
2.4.3.8	<i>rook</i> ("smoke")	372
3.	Summary	382
Appendix	388
Notes	392
Bibliography	394
Contents of SPIL 1, SPIL 2, SPIL 3, SPIL 4, SPIL 5	395

1. Introduction

This working paper presents some of the data and pretheoretical generalizations on which Botha's (1980) study of Afrikaans synthetic compounding is based. However, whereas Botha's study also deals with synthetic compounds which are not verbally based, the data and generalizations in this paper are restricted to verbal compounds. It must be stressed, moreover, that the present paper makes no attempt to provide any explanation whatsoever of the data. It does not purport to be anything more than a pre-theoretical analysis of the data. The paper is presented in the hope that the data and generalizations will be interesting to other linguists currently investigating the same or related aspects of morphology or word formation.

In order to investigate the formation of verbal compounds in Afrikaans, a selected corpus of Afrikaans verbs are classified into four different categories, viz. zero-morph verbs, optional double-object verbs, obligatory transitive verbs and intransitive verbs.¹⁾ In an attempt to state some generalizations about the formation of verbal compounds, the following procedure is observed in the investigation of verbal compounds formed on the basis of each verb. Step 1 is to determine which syntactic categories can be incorporated in the relevant verbal compounds. Step 2 is to determine which grammatical functions can be incorporated in these verbal compounds. Step 3 is to investigate the role of structural adjacency in the verbal compounds. Step 4 is to determine which thematic relations can be incorporated in the verbal compounds concerned.

For each category, function or relation mentioned above, a sentence is given which could form the basis of the relevant verbal compounds. Subsequently, three verbal compounds are given, formed by the incorporation of the relevant category, function or relation, together with an indication of whether the verbal compound concerned is acceptable, probably acceptable but dubious, or unacceptable. The verbal compounds presented have the suffixes *-er* ("er"), *-end* ("ing") and the prefix *ge-* ("ed") respectively.

The incorporation of the following syntactic categories is considered: noun (N), noun phrase (NP), adjective (ADJ), adverb (ADV) and prepositional phrase (PP). The grammatical functions that are considered, are those of subject, direct object, indirect object and non-term functions (especially prepositional phrases). A fifth grammatical function, which I will call that of "bare object" is also considered. A brief characterization of this function will be given below.

To determine the role which structural adjacency plays in verbal compounding, I consider the question of what the VP of a base structure would have to look like if certain constituents were to be incorporated.

Fourteen thematic relations are considered, viz. those of Accompaniment, Agent, Benefactive, Duration, Goal, Instrument, Location, Modality, Patient, Source, Temporality, Thematic relation X, Theme₁ and Theme₂. For a brief characterization of each relation, the reader is referred to the Appendix.

It must be stressed that the generalizations that will be made are based on the few verbs analyzed in this paper only. Therefore the generalizations may prove to be wrong if more data are considered. Furthermore, some of the judgments about the acceptability of the synthetic compounds may not be shared by other native speakers of Afrikaans. However, I hope that the bulk of the data will prove to be useful.

Before turning to the data, a few points still need clarification.

- a. The reader will notice that the base sentences given below are all embedded clauses. In each case a main clause can be added initially, e.g.

(1) *dat Marie brood bak*
that Marie bread bakes

(2) *Jan sê dat Marie brood bak.*
Jan says that Marie bread bakes

It was pointed out by Botha (1980:69, 154 n. 5) that there are reasons for believing that Afrikaans is a SOV language. A rule of Verb Movement moves the verb to the second position in main clauses. Proceeding on the assumption (Botha 1980:67) that verbal compounds are formed on the basis of deep structure phrases, the verb must occur in the final position in the sentence. Because the verb does occur in the final position in embedded clauses, these clauses are taken as bases for the verbal compounds in this paper.

- b. Although the article forms part of the different constituents that are incorporated, it is never incorporated in the synthetic compound, except in the case of some PP's. Why this is the case is not clear to me and I will not pursue the question in this paper.
- c. In the investigation it was found that there are some intransitive verbs which can take some kind of object which cannot be considered to be a direct object, e.g. the intransitive verb *loop* ("walk").

(3) *dat Kobus n ompad loop*
that Kobus a roundabout way walks

In (3), *n ompad* is not a direct object. In the absence of a suitable term to describe the function of the object *n ompad* in (3), I call it a "bare" object.

- d. It was also found that some intransitive verbs can be transitive under certain conditions. Some examples of this phenomenon are listed below.

- (4) *dat die vuur rook*
that the fire smokes
- *dat die vuur die muur rook*
that the fire the wall smokes
- dat die vuur die muur swart rook*
that the fire the wall black smokes
- (5) *dat die kinders skaats*
that the children skate
- *dat die kinders die gang skaats*
that the children the corridor skate
- dat die kinders die gang glad skaats*
that the children the corridor slippery skate
- (6) *dat die man dans*
that the man dances
- *dat die man die meisie dans*
that the man the girl dances
- dat die man die meisie moeg dans*
that the man the girl tired dances
- (7) *dat Jan werk*
that Jan works
- *dat Jan die seun werk*
that Jan the boy works
- dat Jan die seun moeg werk*
that Jan the boy tired works

These sentences reveal that an intransitive verb becomes transitive if the object is qualified by an adjective used predicatively. In sentences such as (4)-(7) the adjective has the function of indicating that the action denoted by the verb brings about a change in the state of the referent of the direct object. As was observed above, no attempt will be made in this paper to find explanations for phenomena such as the one illustrated above.

2. Some verbal compounds

This paragraph, which constitutes the bulk of the paper, contains the data. For each type of verb, I shall present tables which summarize the conclusions drawn on the basis of the data. Subsequently, the (sub-)generalizations which can be made about the incorporation of syntactic categories,

grammatical functions and thematic relations are stated. The individual verbs are then presented.

Before proceeding certain notational conventions that I follow must be explicated.

- a. Verbal compounds consists of two parts, viz. a head and a peripheral part. In order to distinguish between these two parts, orthographically elements of the peripheral part of a verbal compound will be joined by " = ", while the peripheral part and the head will be joined by " - ". For example:

(8)

PERIPHERAL PART		HEAD
<i>op=aandag</i>	-	<i>staner</i>
to attention		stand -er

- b. A question mark, " ? ", indicates that a form is dubious, whereas a star, " * ", indicates that a form is unacceptable.
- c. The head of a verbal compound will be divided into two parts, viz. VERB + AFFIX (+ inflection), as follows.

(9)

PERIPHERAL PART		VERB	AFFIX
<i>brood</i>	-	<i>bak</i>	<i>-ER</i>
bread		bake	-er

and not

(10) *brood-bakker*

- d. In the case of the affixes *-end* and *ge-*, inflection is possible. The inflected part appears between parentheses:

(11) *wyn-drink-END(e)*
wine drink -ing

(12) *nuut-GE-koop(te)*
new -ed buy (= bought)

- e. In the case of the incorporation of PP's, the following convention are followed. If a verbal compound has the form $x=y-z$, where $x=y$ is the peripheral part and z the head, the following possibilities exist:

- (i) (x=)y-z indicates that both x=y-z and y-z are possible verbal compounds.

Example: the notation in (13) implies that both (14) and (15) are possible verbal compounds:

(13) (op=die=)kole - braai-ER
on the coals grill -er

(14) op=die= kole-braai-ER
on the coals grill-er

(15) kole - braai -ER
coals grill -er

- (ii) *(x=)y-z indicates that neither *x=y-z nor *y-z is a possible verbal compound.

Example: the notation in (16) implies that neither (17) nor (18) is a possible verbal compound:

(16) *(op=die=)telefoon-GE-praat(e)
on the phone -ed speak (= spoken)

(17) *op=die=telefoon-GE-praat(e)
on the phone -ed speak (= spoken)

(18) *telefoon-GE-praat(e)
phone -ed speak (= spoken)

- (iii) (*x=)y-z indicates that whereas y-z is a possible verbal compound, *x=y-z is not a possible verbal compound.

Example: the notation in (19) implies that (20) is a possible verbal compound, whereas (21) is not a possible verbal compound:

(19) (*in=die=)ballet-dans -ER
in the ballet dance-er

(20) ballet-dans -ER
ballet dance-er

(21) *in=die=ballet-dans -ER
in the ballet dance-er

- (iv) (x=)*y-z indicates that whereas x=y-z is a possible verbal compound, *y-z is not a possible verbal compound.

Example: the notation in (22) implies that (23) is a possible verbal compound, but (24) is not a possible verbal compound:

- (22) (op=)*aandag - staan-ER
to attention stand-er
- (23) op=aandag - staan-ER
to attention stand-er
- (24) *aandag - staan-ER
attention stand-er

[The symbol " ? " can be used in exactly the same way as the symbol " * " above.]

We will turn now to the first verb type to be considered, viz. the zero-morph verbs.

2.1 Category I: Zero-morph verbs

According to Roeper and Siegel (1978:144), zero-morph verbs are verbs which are obligatorily subcategorized for a direct object. They (1978:245) use the verbs hear and push as examples and propose that push has the following subcategorization:

- (25) [= (138c)] push: [NP] ([adv]) ([PP])

Roeper and Siegel (1978:245) also observe that "when they [i.e. the zero-morph verbs --- I.C.B.] appear on the surface without a direct object, as in She hears well or Don't push!, it is only because the underlying object is unspecified, and so, recoverable. It is deleted by a late syntactic rule or remains as an unrealized dummy marker, but it is still part of the logical representation for semantic interpretation".

In §2.1.1 below four tables are presented which summarize the possible verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of the zero-morph verbs *bak* ("bake"), *braai* ("grill/roast/toast"), *dra* ("carry"), *dra* ("bear"), *drink* ("drink"), *lees* ("read"), *praat* ("speak") and *rook* ("smoke"). In §2.1.2 some of the generalizations emerging from the tables are explicitly formulated. This is followed by the analyses of the eight individual verbs in §2.1.3.

2.1.1 Tables

Table (26) below shows the verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of various syntactic categories. Table (27) contains the verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of the different grammatical functions. Table (29) contains the verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of some thematic relations. Table (28) includes all the NPs necessary to accommodate the base structures of the verbal compounds.²⁾

(26)

SYNTACTIC CATEGORIES

	<i>bak</i> "bake"	<i>braai</i> "grill/roast/toast"	<i>dra</i> "carry"	<i>dra</i> "bear"	<i>drink</i> "drink"	<i>lees</i> "read"	<i>praat</i> "speak"	<i>rook</i> "smoke"
N	<i>pannekoek-bakker</i> <i>brood-bakker</i>	<i>vleis-braaier</i> <i>brood-braaier</i>	<i>vrag-draer</i> <i>tas-draer</i>	<i>lemoen-draer</i> <i>bessie-draer</i>	<i>melk-drinker</i> <i>wyn-drinker</i>	<i>koerant-leser</i> <i>boek-leser</i>	<i>onsin-prater</i> <i>snert-prater</i>	<i>sigaar-roker</i> <i>dagga-roker</i>
	<i>?pannekoek-bakkende</i> <i>?brood-bakkende</i>	<i>vleis-braaiende</i> <i>brood-braaiende</i>	<i>?vrag-draende</i> <i>?tas-draende</i>	<i>lemoen-draende</i> <i>bessie-draende</i>	<i>melk-drinkende</i> <i>wyn-drinkende</i>	<i>koerant-lesende</i> <i>boek-lesende</i>		<i>sigaar-rokende</i> <i>dagga-rokende</i>
NP		<i>vars-vis-braaier</i> <i>gerookte-vis-braaier</i>	<i>?swaar=vrag-draer</i>	<i>?giftige=bessie-draer</i>	<i>afgeroomde=melk-</i> <i>drinker</i> <i>goeie=wyn-drinker</i> <i>afgeroomde=melk-</i> <i>drinkende</i> <i>goeie=wyn-drinkende</i>			<i>dik=sigaar-roker</i> <i>?dik=sigaar-rokende</i>
			<i>?swaar=vrag-draende</i>	<i>?giftige=bessie-</i> <i>draende</i>				
ADJ								
	<i>spoggerig-gebakte</i>		<i>verpak-gedraede</i>			<i>?vars-geleesde</i> <i>stukkend-geleesde</i>	<i>?kapot-geprate</i>	
ADV				<i>?jaarliks-draende</i> <i>?goed-draende</i>	<i>gulsig-drinkende</i>	<i>vinnig-lesende</i>	<i>lelik-prater</i> <i>lelik-pratende</i>	
	<i>vinnig-gebakte</i> <i>reg-gebakte</i>	<i>bruin-gebraaide</i>	<i>maklik-gedraede</i> <i>hierheen-gedraede</i>		<i>?gulsig-gedrinkte</i>			
PP		<i>(op=die=)kole-</i> <i>braaier</i> <i>(in=die=)tuin-</i> <i>braaier</i>	<i>?(op=sy=)*rug-draer</i>	<i>?(in=die=)winter-</i> <i>draer</i> <i>?(deur=die=)*jaar-</i> <i>draer</i>	<i>?(in=die=)*bed-</i> <i>drinker</i> <i>(*in=die=)kroeg-</i> <i>drinker</i>	<i>(op=die=)trein-</i> <i>leser</i> <i>(met=h=)bril-leser</i>	<i>(op=die=)?telefoon-</i> <i>prater</i> <i>(in=die=)?klas-</i> <i>prater</i>	<i>(agter=die=)*klip-</i> <i>muur-roker</i> <i>(op=die=)stoep-</i> <i>roker</i>
		<i>(op=die=)kole-</i> <i>braaiende</i> <i>(in=die=)tuin-</i> <i>braaiende</i>	<i>?(op=sy=)*rug-</i> <i>draende</i>	<i>(in=die=)winter-</i> <i>draende</i> <i>(deur=die=)*jaar-</i> <i>draende</i>		<i>(op=die=)?trein-</i> <i>lesende</i> <i>(met=h=)?bril-</i> <i>lesende</i>	<i>(op=die=)*telefoon-</i> <i>pratende</i> <i>(in=die=)*klas-</i> <i>pratende</i>	<i>(agter=die=)*klip-</i> <i>muur-rokende</i> <i>(op=die=)*stoep-</i> <i>rokende</i>
	<i>(in=die=)oond-</i> <i>gebakte</i> <i>?(op=die=)stoof-</i> <i>gebakte</i>	<i>(op=die=)kole-</i> <i>gebraaide</i> <i>(in=die=)tuin-</i> <i>gebraaide</i>	<i>(op=sy=)*rug-</i> <i>gedraede</i> <i>(in=sy=)*arms-</i> <i>gedraede</i>					

GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS

(27)

	<i>bak</i> "bake"	<i>braai</i> "roast/grill/toast"	<i>dra</i> "carry"	<i>dra</i> "bear"	<i>drink</i> "drink"	<i>lees</i> "read"	<i>praat</i> "speak"	<i>rook</i> "smoke"
Subject								
	<i>?kok-gebakte</i>	<i>?vraat-gebraaide</i> <i>pot-gebraaide</i>	<i>?esel-gedraede</i>					
Direct Object	<i>pannekoek-bakker</i> <i>koek-bakker</i>	<i>brood-braaier</i> <i>vis-braaier</i>	<i>vrag-draer</i> <i>kind-draer</i>	<i>lemoen-draer</i> <i>bessie-draer</i>	<i>melk-drinker</i> <i>wyn-drinker</i>	<i>koerant-leser</i> <i>nuus-leser</i>	<i>onsin-prater</i> <i>waarheid-prater</i>	<i>sigaar-roker</i> <i>dagga-roker</i>
	<i>?pannekoek-bakkende</i> <i>?koek-bakkende</i>	<i>brood-braaiende</i> <i>vis-braaiende</i>	<i>?vrag-draende</i> <i>?kind-draende</i>	<i>lemoen-draende</i> <i>bessie-draende</i>	<i>melk-drinkende</i> <i>wyn-drinkende</i>	<i>koerant-lesende</i> <i>nuus-lesende</i>		<i>sigaar-rokende</i> <i>dagga-rokende</i>
Indirect Object	<i>?(vir=die=)basaar-bakker</i> <i>?(vir=die=)koffie-bakker</i>	<i>?(vir=sy=)*vriende-braaier</i>						<i>(vir=haar=)?seunwees-roker</i>
	<i>?(vir=die=)basaar-bakkende</i>	<i>?(vir=sy=)*vriende-braaiende</i>						<i>?(vir=haar=)*seunwees-rokende</i>
	<i>(vir=die=)*basaar-gebakte</i> <i>(vir=die=)*koffie-gebakte</i>	<i>(vir=sy=)*vriende-gebraaide</i> <i>(vir=die=)ete-gebraaide</i>	<i>(vir=die=)*ou=dame-gedraede</i>					
Non-Term (PP)		<i>(op=die=)kole-braaier</i>	<i>?(op=sy=)*rug-draer</i>	<i>?(in=die=)winter-draer</i>	<i>?(in=die=)*bed-drinker</i> <i>(*in=die=)kroeg-drinker</i>	<i>(in=die=)bed-leser</i> <i>(met=h=)bril-leser</i>	<i>(op=die=)?telefoon-prater</i> <i>(in=die=)?klas-prater</i>	<i>(op=die=)stoep-roker</i> <i>(in=die=)*bed-roker</i>
		<i>(op=die=)kole-braaiende</i>	<i>?(op=sy=)*rug-draende</i>	<i>(in=die=)winter-draende</i>		<i>(in=die=)?bed-lesende</i> <i>(met=h=)?bril-lesende</i>	<i>(op=die=)*telefoon-pratende</i> <i>(in=die=)*klas-pratende</i>	<i>(op=die=)*stoep-rokende</i> <i>(in=die=)*bed-rokende</i>
	<i>(in=die=)oond-gebakte</i> <i>(op=die=)*stoof-gebakte</i>	<i>(op=die=)kole-gebraaide</i>	<i>(op=sy=)*rug-gedraede</i>					

9
STRUCTURAL ADJACENCY

(28)

	<i>bak</i> "bake"	<i>braai</i> "grill/roast/toast"	<i>dra</i> "carry"	<i>dra</i> "bear"	<i>drink</i> "drink"	<i>lees</i> "read"	<i>praat</i> "speak"	<i>rook</i> "smoke"
	<i>koek-bakker</i> ? <i>koek-bakkende</i>	<i>vleis-braaier</i> <i>vleis-braaiende</i>	<i>vrag-draer</i> ? <i>vrag-draende</i>	<i>lemoen-draer</i> <i>lemoen-draende</i>	<i>melk-drinker</i> <i>melk-drinkende</i>	<i>koerant-leser</i> <i>koerant-lesende</i>	<i>onsin-prater</i>	<i>sigaar-roker</i> <i>sigaar-rokende</i>
		<i>vars=vleis-braaier</i>	? <i>swaar=vrag-draer</i> ? <i>swaar=vrag-draende</i>	? <i>giftige=bessie-draer</i> ? <i>giftige=bessie-draende</i>	<i>goeie=wyn-drinker</i> <i>goeie=wyn-drinkende</i>			<i>dik=sigaar-roker</i> ? <i>dik=sigaar-rokende</i>
		(<i>in=die=</i>) <i>tuin-braaier</i> <i>tuin-braaiende</i>	?(<i>op=sy=</i>)* <i>rug-draer</i> ? <i>rug-draende</i>	?(<i>in=die=</i>) <i>winter-draer</i> <i>winter-draende</i>	(<i>*in=die=</i>) <i>kroeg-drinker</i>	(<i>op=die=</i>) <i>trein-leser</i> <i>trein-lesende</i>	(<i>op=die=</i>)? <i>telefoon-prater</i> <i>telefoon-pratende</i>	(<i>agter=die=</i>)* <i>klipmuur-roker</i> <i>klipmuur-rokende</i>
	(<i>vir=die=</i>) <i>basaarbakker</i> <i>basaar-gebakte</i>							(<i>vir=haar=</i>)? <i>semuwees-roker</i> ? <i>semuwees-rokende</i>
	<i>spoggerig-gebakte</i>		<i>verpak-ge draede</i>			? <i>vars-geleesde</i>	? <i>kapot-geprate</i>	
	<i>vinnig-gebakte</i>	<i>vinnig-gebraaide</i>	<i>maklik-ge draede</i>	? <i>goed-draende</i>	<i>gulsig-drinkende</i> ? <i>gulsig-gedrinkte</i>	? <i>moelik-lesende</i>	<i>lelik-prater</i> <i>lelik-pratende</i>	

10
THEMATIC RELATIONS

(29)

	bak "bake"	braai "grill/roast/toast"	dra "carry"	dra "bear"	drink "drink"	lees "read"	praat "speak"	rook "smoke"
Accompaniment	?saam=met=die= pasteie-gebakte	?saam=met=Jan=se= vleis-gebraaide	?saam=met=die= sambreel-gedraede					
Agent	?kok-gebakte	?vraat-gebraaide						
Benefactive	?(vir=die=)basaar- bakker (vir=die=)*basaar- gebakte	?(vir=sy=)*vriende braaier ?(vir=sy=)*vriende- braaiende (vir=sy=)*vriende- gebraaide	(vir=die=)*ou= dame-gedraede	(vir=h=)*maand-draende			?(vir=sy=)*koshuie- pratende	(vir=haar=)?semu- wees-roker (vir=haar=)*semu- wees-rokende
Duration	?(vir=h=)halfluur- gebakte	?(vir=h=)minuut- gebraaide	(vir=h=)*uur- gedraede					
Goal	(vir=die=)*partytjie- gebakte	gaar-gebraaide	(na=die=)skool=toe- gedraede		(vir=haar=)*hoofpyn- gedrinkte	stukkend-geleesde		
Instrument	(met=h=)*stoof- gebakte	(op=die=)rooster- braaier (op=die=)rooster braaiende (op=die=)rooster- gebraaide	(met=h=)*draagbaar- gedraede		?(met=h=)*strooitjie- gedrinkte (*in=die=)kroeg- drinker	(met=h=)bril-leser (*met=h=)?bril- lesende		(?met=h=)pyp-roker (*met=h=)jyyp- rokende
Location	(op=die=)*stoof- gebakte	(in=die=)tuin- braaier (in=die=)tuin- braaiende (in=die=)tuin- gebraaide	?(in=sy=)*arms- draer ?(in=sy=)*arms- draende (in=sy=)*arms- gedraede			(op=die=)trein- leser (op=die=)?trein- lesende	(op=die=)*vergade- ring-prater (op=die=)*vergade- ring-pratende	(op=die=)etsep- roker (op=die=)*etsep- rokende
Modality	heerlik-gebakte	bruin-gebraaide	maklik-gedraede				lelik-prater lelik-pratende	
Patient	pannekoek-bakker ?pannekoek-bakkende	wors-braaier wors-braaiende	vrag-draer ?vrag-draende	lemoen-draer lemoen-draende	wyn-drinker wyn-drinkende	koerant-leser koerant-lesende	onsin-prater	sigaar-roker sigaar-rokende
Source	(met=)*meel-gebakte		van=die= staste= af-gedraede			?(uit=die=)*bundel- leser ?(uit=die=)*bundel- lesende		(uit=)gewoonte- roker ?(uit=)*gewoonte- rokende
Temporality	(in=die=)*oggend- gebakte	?(in=die=)*aand- braaier ?(in=die=)*aand- braaiende ?(in=die=)*aand- gebraaide	(in=die=)*oggend gedraede	?(in=die=)winter- draer (in=die=)winter- draende				(by=)geleentheid- roker ?(by=)*geleentheid- rokende
Theme ₁	?kok-gebakte	?vraat-gebraaide	?esel-gedraede					
Theme ₂	pastei-bakker ?pastei-bakkende	vleis-braaier vleis-braaiende	vrag-draer ?vrag-draende	bessie-draer bessie-draende	melk-drinker melk-drinkende	mus-leser mus-lesende	snert-prater	dagga-roker dagga-rokende

2.1.2 Generalizations

2.1.2.1 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING THE INCORPORATION OF SYNTACTIC CATEGORIES³⁾

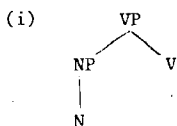
- a. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is a zero-morph verb and of which the peripheral constituent is a noun or a prepositional phrase.
- b. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation fairly productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is a zero-morph verb and of which the peripheral constituent is a noun phrase.
- c. *-er* Suffixation unproductively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is a zero-morph verb (i.e. *praat*) and of which the peripheral constituent is an adverb.
- d. *-end* Suffixation fairly productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is a zero-morph verb and of which the peripheral constituent is an adverb.
- e. *ge-* Prefixation fairly productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is a zero-morph verb and of which the peripheral constituent is an adjective, adverb or prepositional phrase.

2.1.2.2 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING THE INCORPORATION OF GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS

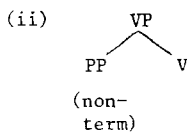
- a. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is a zero-morph verb and of which the peripheral constituent is a direct object or a prepositional phrase.
- b. *-er*, *-end* and *ge-* Affixation fairly productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is a zero-morph verb and of which the peripheral constituent is an indirect object.
- c. *ge-* Prefixation fairly productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is a zero-morph verb and of which the peripheral constituent is a subject or a prepositional phrase.

2.1.2.3 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING STRUCTURAL ADJACENCY

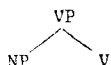
- a. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases in which the VPs has either of the following structures:



where V is a zero-morph verb.

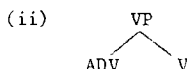
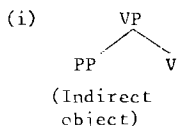


- b. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation fairly productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases in which the VP has the following structure:



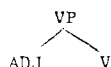
where V is a zero-morph verb.

- c. *-er*, *-end* and *ge-* Affixation fairly productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases in which the VPs has either of the following structures:



where V is a zero-morph verb.

- d. *ge-* Prefixation fairly productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases in which the VP has the following structure:



where V is a zero-morph verb.

2.1.2.4 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING THE INCORPORATION OF THEMATIC RELATIONS

- a. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is a zero-morph verb and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating the patient or theme₂.
- b. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation fairly productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is a zero-morph verb and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating a benefactive, an instrument, a location, modality, a source or temporality.

- c. *ge-* Prefixation fairly productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head constituent is a zero-morph verb and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating accompaniment, the agent, a benefactive, duration, a goal, an instrument, a location, modality, a source, temporality or theme₁.

2.1.2.5 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING STRING ADJACENCY⁴)

As is clear from the analyses of the individual verbs in §2.1.3 below, those constituents of the deep structure phrase that constitute the peripheral constituent of the synthetic compound must be adjacent to the verb in the deep structure phrase which will constitute the head of the synthetic compound.

2.1.3 Some verbs

2.1.3.1 bak ("bake")

Simple derivations: *bak* -*ER*
 bake -er (= "baker")
 ?*bak* -*END(e)*
 bake -ing (= "baking")
GE- *bak(te)*
 -ed bake (= "baked")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(30) *dat Susan pannekoek bak*
 that Susan pancake bakes

-er : *pannekoek - bak -ER*
 pancake bake -er

-end : ?*pannekoek - bak -END(e)*
 pancake bake -ing

ge- : ?*pannekoek - GE- bak(te)*
 pancake -ed bake
 (= "pancake-baked")

- (31) *dat ouma brood bak*
that grandma bread bakes

-er : *brood - bak -ER*
bread bake -er

-end : *?brood - bak -END(e)*
bread bake -ing

ge- : **brood - GE- bak(te)*
bread -ed bake
(= "bread-baked")

(ii) Noun phrases

- (32) *dat Susan altyd groot pannekoeke bak*
that Susan always big pancakes bakes

-er : **groot=pannekoeke - bak -ER*
big pancakes bake -er

-end : **groot=pannekoeke - bak -END(e)*
big pancakes bake -ing

ge- : **groot=pannekoeke - GE- bak(te)*
big pancakes -ed bake
(= "big pancakes-baked")

- (33) *dat die kok vetterige wors bak*
that the cook fatty sausage fries

-er : **vetterige=wors - bak -ER*
fatty sausage fry -er

-end : **vetterige=wors - bak -END(e)*
fatty sausage fry -ing

ge- : **vetterige=wors - GE- bak(te)*
fatty sausage -ed fry
(= "fatty sausage-fried")

(iii) Adjectives

- (34) *dat Susan die pannekoeke groot bak*
that Susan the pancakes big bakes

-er : **groot - bak -ER*
big bake -er

-end : *groot - bak -END(e)
big bake -ing

ge- : *groot - GE- bak(te)
big -ed bake
(= "big-baked")

(35) *dat Marie die koek spoggerig bak*
that Marie the cake beautiful bakes

-er : *spoggerig - bak -ER
beautiful bake -er

-end : *spoggerig - bak -END(e)
beautiful bake -ing

ge- : spoggerig - GE- bak(te)
beautiful -ed bake
(= "beautiful-baked")

(iv) Adverbs

(36) *dat Marie brood vinnig bak*
that Marie bread fast bakes

-er : *vinnig - bak -ER
fast bake -er

-end : *vinnig - bak -END(e)
fast bake -ing

ge- : vinnig - GE- bak(te)
fast -ed bake
(= "fast-baked")

(37) *dat die bakkerij pasteie gereeld bak*
that the bakery pies regularly bakes

-er : *gereeld - bak -ER
regularly bake -er

-end : *gereeld - bak -END(e)
regularly bake -ing

ge- : *gereeld - GE- bak(te)
regularly -ed bake
(= "regularly-baked")

(38) *dat hy die vis reg bak*
 that he the fish correctly fries

-er : *reg - bak -ER
 correctly fry -er

-end : *reg - bak -END(e)
 correctly fry -ing

ge- : reg - GE- bak(te)
 correctly -ed fry
 (= "correctly-fried")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(39) *dat Marie 'n koek in die oond bak*
 that Marie a cake in the oven bakes

-er : *(in=die=)oond-bak -ER
 (in the) oven bake -er

-end : *(in=die=)oond-bak -END(e)
 (in the) oven bake -ing

ge- : (in=die=)oond - GE- bak(te)
 (in the) oven -ed bake
 (= "(in the) oven-baked")

(40) *dat die kok pannekoek op die stoof bak*
 that the cook pancake on the stove bakes

-er : *(op=die=)stoof - bak -ER
 (on the) stove bake -er

-end : *(op=die=)stoof - bak -END(e)
 (on the) stove bake -ing

ge- : ?(op=die=)stoof - GE- bak(te)
 (on the) stove -ed bake
 (= "(on the) stove-baked")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(41) *dat die kok bak*
 that the cook bakes

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>kok</i> - <i>bak</i> -ER cook bake -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>kok</i> - <i>bak</i> -END(e) cook bake -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	? <i>kok</i> - GE- <i>bak</i> (te) cook -ed bake (= "cook-baked")

(ii) Direct object

(42) *dat die kok pannekoek bak*
that the cook pancake bakes

<u>-er</u>	:	<i>pannekoek</i> - <i>bak</i> -ER pancake bake -er
<u>-end</u>	:	? <i>pannekoek</i> - <i>bak</i> -END(e) pancake bake -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>pannekoek</i> - GE- <i>bak</i> (te) pancake -ed bake (= "pancake-baked")

(43) *dat Marie graag koek bak*
that Marie voluntarily cake bakes

<u>-er</u>	:	<i>koek</i> - <i>bak</i> -ER cake bake -er
<u>-end</u>	:	? <i>koek</i> - <i>bak</i> -END(e) cake bake -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>koek</i> - GE- <i>bak</i> (te) cake -ed bake (= "cake-baked")

(iii) Indirect object

(44) *dat Marie altyd vir die bazaar bak*
that Marie always for the bazaar bakes

<u>-er</u>	:	?(<i>vir=die=</i>) <i>bazaar</i> - <i>bak</i> -ER (for the) bazaar bake -er
<u>-end</u>	:	?(<i>vir=die=</i>) <i>bazaar</i> - <i>bak</i> -END(e) (for the) bazaar bake -ing

ge- : (vir=die)*bazaar - GE- bak(te)
 (for the) bazaar -ed bake
 (= (for the) bazaar-baked")

(45) *dat die bakker net vir die kafee bak*
 that the baker only for the cafe bakes

-er : ?(vir=die)kafee - bak -ER
 (for the) cafe bake -er

-end : *(vir=die=)kafee - bak -END(e)
 (for the) cafe bake -ing

ge- : (vir=die=)*kafee - GE- bak(te)
 (for the) cafe -ed bake
 (= (for the) cafe-baked")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(46) *dat Susan brood in die oond bak*
 that Susan bread in the oven bakes

-er : *(in=die=)oond - bak -ER
 (in the) oven bake -er

-end : *(in=die=)oond - bak -END(e)
 (in the) oven bake -ing

ge- : (in=die=)oond - GE- bak(te)
 (in the) oven -ed bake
 (= "(in the) oven baked")

(47) *dat Marie pannekoek op die stoof bak*
 that Marie pancake on the stove bakes

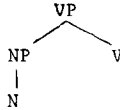
-er : *(op=die=)stoof - bak -ER
 (on the) stove bake -er

-end : *(op=die=)stoof - bak -END(e)
 (on the) stove bake -ing

ge- : (op=die=)*stoof - GE- bak(te)
 (on the) stove -ed bake
 (= "(on the) stove-baked")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



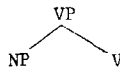
(48) *dat Marie 'n koek bak*
 that Marie a cake bakes

-er : *koek - bak -ER*
 cake bake -er

-end : *?koek - bak -END(e)*
 cake bake -ing

ge- : **koek - GE- bak(te)*
 cake -ed bake
 (= "cake-baked")

(ii)



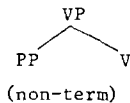
(49) *dat sy altyd groot pannekoeke bak*
 that she always big pancakes bakes

-er : **groot=pannekoeke - bak -ER*
 big pancakes bake -er

-end : **groot=pannekoeke - bak -END(e)*
 big pancakes bake -ing

ge- : **groot=pannekoeke - GE- bak(te)*
 big pancakes -ed bake
 (= big pancakes-baked")

(iii)



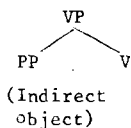
(50) *dat sy pasteie altyd in die oggend bak*
 that she pies always in the morning bakes

-er : **(in=die=)oggend - bak -ER*
 (in the) morning bake -er

-end : *(in=die=)oggend - bak -END(e)
 (in the) morning bake -ing

ge- : (in=die=)*oggend - GE- bak(te)
 (in the) morning -ed bake
 (= "(in the) morning-baked")

(iii)



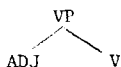
(51) *dat ouma altyd vir die bazaar bak*
 that grandma always for the bazaar bakes

-er : (vir=die=)bazaar - bak -ER
 (for the) bazaar bake -er

-end : *(vir=die=)bazaar - bak -END(e)
 (for the) bazaar bake -ing

ge- : (vir=die=)*bazaar - GE- bak(te)
 (for the) bazaar -ed bake
 (= (for the) bazaar-baked")

(iv)



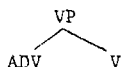
(52) *dat die kok pastei spoggerig bak*
 that the cook pies beautiful bakes

-er : *spoggerig - bak -ER
 beautiful bake -er

-end : *spoggerig - bak -END(e)
 beautiful bake -ing

ge- : spoggerig - GE- bak(te)
 beautiful -ed bake
 (= "beautiful-baked")

(v)



(53) *dat Marie brood vinnig bak*
 that Marie bread fast bakes

<u>-er</u>	:	*vinnig - bak -ER
		fast bake -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*vinnig - bak -END(e)
		fast bake -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	vinnig - GE- bak(te)
		fast -ed bake
		(= "fast-baked")

d. Thematic functions(i) Accompaniment

- (54) *dat ouma die koek saam met die pasteie bak*
that grandma the cake along with the pies bakes

<u>-er</u>	:	*saam =met =die=pasteie - bak -ER
		along with the pies bake -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*saam = met=die=pasteie - bak -END(e)
		along with the pies bake -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*saam = met=die=pasteie - GE- bak(te)
		along with the pies -ed bake
		(= "along with the pies-baked")

(ii) Agent

- (55) *dat Marie koek bak om ekstra geld te verdien*
that Marie cake bakes to extra money earn

<u>-er</u>	:	*Marie - bak -ER
		Marie bake -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*Marie - bak -END(e)
		Marie bake -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*Marie - GE- bak(te)
		Marie -ed bake
		(= "Marie-baked")

(iii) Benefactive

- (56) *dat Marie gewoonlik vir die bazaar bak*
that Marie usually for the bazaar bakes

<u>-er</u>	:	?(vir=die=)bazaar - bak -ER
		(for the) bazaar bake -er

-end : *(vir=die=)basaar - bak -END(e)
 (for the) bazaar bake -ing

ge- : (vir=die=)*basaar - GE- bak(te)
 (for the) bazaar -ed bake
 (= "(for the)bazaar-baked")

(iv) Duration

(57) *dat Marie die koek vir 'n halfuur bak*
 that Marie the cake for half an hour bakes

-er : *(vir=h=)halfuur - bak -ER
 (for) half an hour bake -er

-end : *(vir=h=)halfuur - bak -END(e)
 (for) half an hour bake -ing

ge- : ?(vir=h=)halfuur - GE- bak(te)
 (for) half an hour -ed bake
 (= "(for) half an hour-baked")

(v) Goal

(58) *dat Susan koek vir die partytjie bak*
 that Susan cake for the party bakes

-er : *(vir=die=)partytjie - bak -ER
 (for the) party bake -er

-end : *(vir=die=)partytjie - bak -END(e)
 (for the) party bake -ing

ge- : (vir=die=)*partytjie - GE- bak(te)
 (= "(for) the party-baked")

(vi) Instrument

(59) *dat mens koek met 'n stoof bak*
 that one cake with a stove bakes

-er : *(met=h=)stoof - bak -ER
 (with a)stove bake -er

-end : *(met=h=)stoof - bak -END(e)
 (with a)stove bake -ing

ge- : (met=n-)*stoof - GE- bak(te)
 (with a) stove -ed bake
 (= "(with a) stove-baked")

(vii) Location

(60) *dat Susan pannekoek op die stoof bak*
 that Susan pancake on the stove bakes

-er : *(op=die-)*stoof - bak -ER
 (on the) stove bake -er

-end : *(op=die-)*stoof - bak -END(e)
 (on the) stove bake -ing

ge- : (op=die-)*stoof - GE- bak(te)
 (on the) stove -ed bake
 (= "(on the) stove-baked")

(viii) Modality

(61) *dat die kok pannekoek heerlik bak*
 that the cook pancake deliciously bakes

-er : *heerlik - bak -ER
 deliciously bake -er

-end : *heerlik - bak -END(e)
 deliciously bake -ing

ge- : heerlik - GE- bak(te)
 deliciously -ed bake
 (= "deliciously-baked")

(ix) Patient

(62) *dat die kok pannekoek bak*
 that the cook pancake bakes

-er : pannekoek - bak -ER
 pancake bake -er

-end : ?pannekoek - bak -END(e)
 pancake bake -ing

ge- : *pannekoek - GE- bak(te)
 pancake -ed bake
 (= "pancake-baked")

(x) Source

(63) *dat h mens koek met meel bak*
that a person cake with flour bakes

-er : *(met-) meel - bak -ER
(with) flour bake -er

-end : *(met-) meel - bak -END(e)
(with) flour bake -ing

ge- : (met-)*meel - GE- bak(te)
(with) flour -ed bake
(= "(with) flour-baked")

(xi) Temporality

(64) *dat ouma pasteie in die oggend bak*
that grandma pies in the morning bakes

-er : *(in=die)oggend - bak -ER
(in the)morning bake -er

-end : *(in=die=)oggend - bake -END(e)
(in the) morning bake -ing

ge- : (in=die)*oggend - GE- bak(te)
(in the) morning -ed bake
(= "(in the) morning-baked")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(65) *dat die kok bak*
that the cook bakes

-er : *kok - bak -ER
cook bake -er

-end : *kok - bak -END(e)
cook bake -ing

ge- : ?kok - GE- bak(te)
cook -ed bake
(= "cook-baked")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(66) *dat ouma h pastei bak*
that grandma a pie bakes

-er : *pastei - bak -ER*
 pie bake -er

-end : *?pastei - bak -END(e)*
 pie bake -ing

ge- : **pastei - GE- bak(te)*
 pie -ed bake
 (= "pie-baked")

2.1.3.2 braai ("grill/roast/toast")

Simple derivations: *braai -ER*
 grill -er/roast -er/toast -er
 (= "griller/roaster/toaster")

braai -END(e)
 grill -ing/roast -ing/toast -ing
 (= "grilling/roasting/toasting")

GE- braai(de)
 -ed grill/-ed roast/-ed toast
 (= "grilled/roasted/toasted")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(67) *dat Jan vleis braai*
 that Jan meat grills

-er : *vleis - braai -ER*
 meat grill -er

-end : *vleis - braai -END(e)*
 meat grill -ing

ge- : **vleis - GE- braai(de)*
 meat -ed grill
 (= "meat-grilled")

(68) *dat die vraat brood braai*
 that the gourmand bread toasts

-er : *brood - braai -ER*
 bread toast -er

-end : *brood - braai -END(e)*
 bread toast -ing

ge- : *brood - GE- braai(de)
bread -ed toast
(= "bread-toasted")

(ii) Noun phrases

(69) *dat die kok die vars vis braai*
that the cook the fresh fish grills

-er : vars =vis - braai -ER
fresh fish grill -er

-end : *vars =vis - braai -END(e)
fresh fish grill -ing

ge- : *vars =vis - GE- braai(de)
fresh fish -ed grill
(= "fresh fish-grilled")

(70) *dat die vraat gerookte vis braai*
that the gourmand smoked fish grills

-er : gerookte=vis - braai -ER
smoked fish grill -er

-end : *gerookte=vis - braai -END(e)
smoked fish grill -ing

ge- : *gerookte=vis - GE- braai(de)
smoked fish -ed grill
(= "smoked fish-grilled")

(iii) Adjectives

(71) *dat die kok die vleis vars braai*
that the cook the meat fresh grills

-er : *vars - braai -ER
fresh grill -er

-end : *vars - braai -END(e)
fresh grill -ing

ge- : *vars - GE- braai(de)
fresh -ed grill
(= "fresh-grilled")

(72) *dat Marie die brood oud braai*
that Marie the bread stale toasts

- er : *oud - braai -ER
 stale toast -er
 (= "person who toasts (something) stale")
- end : *oud - braai -END(e)
 stale toast -ing
- ge- : *oud - GE- braai(de)
 stale -ed toast
 (= "stale-toasted")

(iv) Adverbs

- (73) *dat Marie die brood bruin braai*
 that Marie the bread brown toasts

- er : *bruin - braai -ER
 brown toast -er
- end : *bruin - braai -END(e)
 brown toast -ing
- ge- : bruin - GE- braai(de)
 brown -ed toast
 (= "brown-toasted")

- (73) *dat Jan daar braai*
 that Jan There grills

- er : *daar - braai -ER
 there grill -er
- end : *daar - braai -END(e)
 there grill -ing
- ge- : *daar - GE- braai(de)
 there -ed grill
 (= "there-grilled")

(v) Prepositional phrases

- (74) *dat Pieter die brood op die kole braai*
 that Pieter the bread on the coals toasts

- er : (op=die=)kole - braai -ER
 (on the) coals toast -er
- end : (op=die=)kole - braai -END(e)
 (on the) coals toast -ing

ge- : (op=die=kole - GE- braai(de)
(on the) coals -ed toast
(= "(on the) coals-toasted")

(75) dat hulle vleis in die tuin braai
that they meat in the garden grill

-er : (in=die=)tuin - braai -ER
(in the) garden grill -er

-end : (in=die=)tuin - braai -END(e)
(in the) garden grill -ing

ge- : (in=die=)tuin - GE- braai(de)
(in the) garden -ed grill
(= "(in the) garden-grilled")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(76) dat die vraat braai
that the gourmand grills

-er : *vraat - braai -ER
gourmand grill -er

-end : *vraat braai -END(e)
gourmand grill -ing

ge- : ?vraat - GE- braai(de)
gourmand -ed grill
(= "gourmand-grilled")

(77) dat die pot braai
that the pot roasts

-er : *pot - braai -ER
pot roast -er

-end : *pot - braai -END(e)
pot roast -ing

ge- : pot - GE- braai(de)
pot -ed roast
(= "pot-roasted")

(ii) Direct object

(78) *dat die vraat brood braai*
that the gourmand bread toasts

-er : brood - braai -ER
bread toast -er

-end : brood - braai -END(e)
bread toast -ing

ge- : *brood - GE- braai(de)
bread -ed toast
(= "bread-toasted")

(79) *dat Jan vis braai*
that Jan fish grills

-er : vis - braai -ER
fish grill -er

-end : vis - braai -END(e)
fish grill -ing

ge- : *vis - GE- braai(de)
fish -ed grill
(= "fish-grilled")

(iii) Indirect object

(80) *dat Jan vleis vir sy vriende braai*
that Jan meat for his friends grills

-er : ?(vir=sy)*vriende - braai -ER
(for his) friends grill -er

-end : ?(vir=sy)*vriende- braai -END(e)
(for his) friends grill -ing

ge- : (vir=sy)*vriende - GE- braai(de)
(for his) friends -ed grill
(= "(for his) friends-grilled")

(81) *dat Jan vleis vir die ete braai*
that Jan meat for the meal grills

-er : *(vir=die)=ete - braai -ER
(for the) meal grill -er

-end : *(vir=die) ete - braai -END(e)
 (for the) meal grill -ing

ge- : (vir=die) *ete - GE- braai(de)
 (for the) meal -ed grill
 (= "(for the) meal-grilled")

(iv) Non-term (Prepositional phrases)

(82) *dat Jan brood op die kole braai*
 that Jan bread on the coals toasts

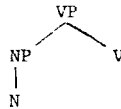
-er : (op=die) kole - braai -ER
 (on the) coals toast -er

-end : (op=die) kole - braai -END(e)
 (on the) coals toast -ing

ge- : (op=die) kole - GE- braai(de)
 (on the) coals -ed toast
 (= "(on the) coals-toasted")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



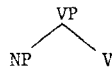
(83) *dat die vraat vleis braai*
 that the gourmand meat grills

-er : vleis - braai -ER
 meat grill -er

-end : vleis - braai -END(e)
 meat grill -ing

ge- : *vleis - GE- braai(de)
 meat -ed grill
 (= "meat-grilled")

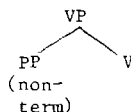
(ii)



(84) *dat die kok vars vleis braai*
 that the cook fresh meat grills

- er : vars =vleis - braai -ER
fresh meat grill -er
- end : *vars =vleis - braai -END(e)
fresh meat grill -ing
- ge- : *vars =vleis - GE- braai(de)
fresh meat -ed grill
(= "fresh meat-grilled")

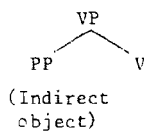
(iii)



- (85) *dat Jan die vleis in die tuin braai*
that Jan the meat in the garden grills

- er : (in=die=)tuin - braai -ER
(in the) garden grill -er
- end : (in=die=)tuin - braai -END(e)
(in the) garden grill -ing
- ge- : (in=die=)tuin - GE- braai(de)
(in the) garden -ed grill
(= "(in the) garden-grilled")

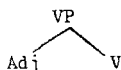
(iv)



- (86) *dat Pieter brood vir die ete braai*
that Pieter bread for the meal grills

- er : *(vir=die=)ete - braai -ER
(for the) meal grill -er
- end : *(vir=die=) ete - braai -END(e)
(for the) meal grill -ing
- ge- : (vir=die=)*ete - GE- braai(de)
(for the) meal -ed grill
(= "(for the) meal-grilled")

(v)



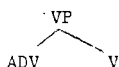
(87) *dat Marie die brood oud braai*
 that Marie the bread stale toasts

-er : *oud - braai -ER
 stale toast -er

-end : *oud - braai -END(e)
 stale toast -ing

ge- : *oud - GE- braai(de)
 stale -ed toast
 (= "stale-toasted")

(vi)



(88) *dat Jan die vleis vinnig braai*
 that Jan the meat fast roasts

-er : *vinnig - braai -ER
 fast roast -er

-end : *vinnig - braai -END(e)
 fast roast -ing

ge- : vinnig - GE- braai(de)
 fast -ed roast
 (= "fast-roasted")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(89) *dat die vraat sy vleis saam met Jan se vleis braai*
 that the gourmand his meat together with Jan's meat grills

-er : *saam=met=Jan=se=vleis - braai -ER
 together with Jan's meat grill -er

-end : *saam=met=Jan=se=vleis - braai -END(e)
 together with Jan's meat grill -ing

ge- : ?saam=met=Jan=se=vleis - GE- braai(de)
 together with Jan's meat -ed grill
 (= "together with Jan's meat-grilled")

(ii) Agent

(90) *dat die vraat vleis braai om te eet*
that the gourmand meat grills to eat

-er : *vraat braai -ER
gourmand grill -er

-end : *vraat - braai -END(e)
gourmand grill -ing

ge- : ?vraat - GE- braai(de)
gourmand -ed grill
(= "gourmand-grilled")

(iii) Benefactive

(91) *dat die vraat brood vir sy vriende braai*
that the gourmand bread for his friends toasts

-er : ?(vir=sy)*vriende - braai -ER
(for his) friends toast -er

-end : ?(vir=sy)*vriende - braai -END(e)
(for his) friends toast -ing

ge- : (vir=sy)*vriende - GE- braai(de)
(for his) friends -ed toast
(= "(for his) friends-toasted")

(iv) Duration

(92) *dat Jan die vleis vir 'n minuut braai*
that Jan the meat for a minute grills

-er : *(vir=h)minuut - braai -ER
(for a) minute grill -er

-end : *(vir=h)minuut - braai -END(e)
(for a) minute grill -ing

ge- : ?(vir=h)*minuut - GE- braai(de)
(for a) minute -ed grill
(= "(for a) minute-grilled")

(v) Goal

(93) *dat Jan die vleis gaar braai*
that Jan the meat cooked grills

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>gaar</i>	-	<i>braai</i>	-ER
		cooked		grill	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>gaar</i>	-	<i>braai</i>	-END(e)
		cooked		grill	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	<i>gaar</i>	-	GE- <i>braai</i>	(de)
		cooked	-ed	grill	
		(= "cooked-grilled")			

(vi) Instrument

(94) *dat Jan die brood op die rooster braai*
 that Jan the bread on the grid grills

<u>-er</u>	:	(<i>op=die=</i>) <i>rooster</i>	-	<i>braai</i>	-ER
		(on the) grid		grill	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	(<i>op=die=</i>) <i>rooster</i>	-	<i>braai</i>	-END(e)
		(on the) grid		grill	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	(<i>op=die=</i>) <i>rooster</i>	-	GE- <i>braai</i>	(de)
		(on the) grid	-ed	grill	
		(= "(on the) grid-grilled")			

(vii) Location

(95) *dat die vraat die vleis in die tuin braai*
 that the gourmand the meat in the garden grills

<u>-er</u>	:	(<i>in=die=</i>) <i>tuin</i>	-	<i>braai</i>	-ER
		(in the) garden		grill	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	(<i>in=die=</i>) <i>tuin</i>	-	<i>braai</i>	-END(e)
		(in the) garden		grill	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	(<i>in=die=</i>) <i>tuin=</i>	GE-	<i>braai</i>	(de)
		(in the) garden	-ed	grill	
		(= "(in the) garden-grilled")			

(viii) Modality

(96) *dat Jan die vleis bruin braai*
 that Jan the meat brown roasts

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>bruin</i>	-	<i>braai</i>	-ER
		brown		roast	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>bruin</i>	-	<i>braai</i>	-END(e)
		brown		roast	-ing

ge- : bruin - GE- braai(de)
 brown -ed roast
 (= "brown-roasted")

(ix) Patient

(97) dat Jan die wors braai
 that Jan the sausage grills

-er : wors - braai -ER
 sausage grill -er

-end : wors - braai -END(e)
 sausage grill -ing

ge- : *wors - GE- braai(de)
 sausage -ed grill
 (= "sausage-grilled")

(x) Source

(98) dat Jan die brood van die bakker braai
 that Jan the bread of the baker toasts

-er : *(van=die=)bakker - braai -ER
 (of the) baker toast -er

-end : *(van=die=)bakker - braai -END(e)
 (of the) baker toast -ing

ge- : *(van=die=)bakker - GE- braai(de)
 (of the) baker -ed toast
 (= "(of the) baker-toasted")

(xi) Temporality

(99) dat Jan vleis in die aand braai
 that Jan meat in the evening grills

-er : ?(in=die=)*aand - braai -ER
 (in the) evening grill -er

-end : ?(in=die=)*aand - braai -END(e)
 (in the) evening grill -ing

ge- : ?(in=die=)*aand - GE- braai(de)
 (in the) evening -ed grill
 (= "(in the) evening-grilled")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)(100) *dat die vraat braai*
that the gourmand grills-er : *vraat - braai -ER
gourmand grill -er-end : *vraat - braai -END(e)
gourmand grill -ingge- : ?vraat - GE- braai(de)
gourmand -ed grill
(= "gourmand-grilled")(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)(101) *dat die vraat vleis braai*
that the gourmand meat grills-er : vleis - braai -ER
meat grill -er-end : vleis - braai -END(e)
meat grill -ingge- : *vleis - GE- braai(de)
meat -ed grill
(= "meat-grilled")2.1.3.3 dra ("carry")Simple derivations: *dra* -ER
carry -er ("carrier")
?dra -END(e)5
carry -ing ("carrying")
GE- *dra*(de)
-ed carry ("carried")a. Syntactic categories(i) Nouns(102) *dat die esel die vrag dra*
that the donkey the load carries

-er : *vrag - dra -ER*
 load carry -er

-end : *?vrag - dra -END(e)*
 load carry -ing

ge- : **vrag - GE- dra(de)*
 load -ed carry
 (= "load-carried")

(103) *dat die sakeman h tas dra* —
 that the businessman a bag carries

-er : *tas - dra -ER*
 bag carry -er

-end : *?tas - dra -END(e)*
 bag carry -ing

ge- : **tas - GE- dra(de)*
 bag -ed carry
 (= "bag-carried")

(ii) Noun phrases

(104) *dat die esel h swaar vrag dra*
 that the donkey h heavy load carries

-er : *?swaar=vrag - dra -ER*
 heavy load carry -er

-end : *?swaar=vrag - dra -END(e)*
 heavy load carry -ing

ge- : **swaar=vrag - GE- dra(de)*
 heavy load -ed carry
 (= "heavy load-carried")

(iii) Adjectives

(105) *dat die esel die vrag verpak dra*
 that the donkey the load packed carries

-er : **verpak - dra -ER*
 packed carry -er

-end : **verpak - dra -END(e)*
 packed carry -ing

ge- : *verpak - GE- dra(de)*
 packed -ed carry
 (= "packed-carried")

(iv) Adverbs

(106) *dat die man die meisie maklik dra*
 that the man the girl easily carries

-er : **maklik - dra -ER*
 easily carry -er

-end : **maklik - dra -END(e)*
 easily carry -ing

ge- : *maklik - GE- dra(de)*
 easily -ed carry
 (= "easily-carried")

(107) *dat die hond die sokkie hierheen dra*
 that the dog the sock this way carries

-er : **hierheen - dra -ER*
 this way carry -er

-end : **hierheen - dra -END(e)*
 this way carry -ing

ge- : *hierheen - GE- dra(de)*
 this way -ed carry
 (= "this way-carried")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(108) *dat die esel die vrag op sy rug dra*
 that the donkey the load on his back carries

-er : ?(*op=sy=*)**rug - dra -ER*
 (on his) back carry -er

-end : ?(*op=sy=*)**rug - dra -END(e)*
 (on his) back carry -ing

ge- : (*op=sy=*)**rug - GE- dra(de)*
 (on his) back -ed carry
 (= "(on his) back-carried")

(109) *dat die man die kind in sy arms dra*
 that the man the child in his arms carries

-er : *(in=sy=)arms - dra -ER
(in his) arms carry -er

-end : *(in=sy=)arms - dra -END(e)
(in his) arms carry -ing

ge- : (in=sy=)*arms - GE- dra(de)
(in his) arms -ed carry
(= "(in his) arms-carried")

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

(110) *dat die esel dra*
that the donkey carries

-er : *esel - dra -ER
donkey carry -er

-end : *esel - dra -END(e)
donkey carry -ing

ge- : ?esel - GE- dra(de)
donkey -ed carry
(= "donkey-carried")

(ii) Direct object

(111) *dat die esel die vrag dra*
that the donkey the load carries

-er : vrag - dra -ER
load carry -er

-end : ?vrag - dra -END(e)
load carry -ing

ge- : *vrag - GE- dra(de)
load -ed carry
(= "load-carried")

(112) *dat die man sy kind dra*
that the man his child carries

-er : kind - dra -ER
child carry -er

-end : ?*kind* - *dra* -END(*e*)
 child carry -ing

ge- : **kind* - GE- *dra(de)*
 child -ed carry
 (= "child-carried")

(iii) Indirect object

(113) *dat die kind die pakkies vir die ou dame dra*
 that the child the parcels for the old woman carries

-er : *(*vir=die=*)*ou=dame* - *dra* -ER
 (for the) old woman carry -er

-end : *(*vir=die=*)*ou=dame* - *dra* -END(*e*)
 (for the) old woman carry -ing

ge- : (*vir=die=*)**ou=dame* - GE- *dra(de)*
 (for the) old woman -ed carry
 (= "(for the) old woman-carried")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(114) *dat die esel die vrag op sy rug dra*
 that the donkey the load on his back carries

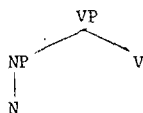
-er : ?(*op=sy=*)**rug* - *dra* -ER
 (on his) back carry -er

-end : ?(*op=sy=*)**rug* - *dra* -END(*e*)
 (on his) back carry -ing

ge- : (*op=sy=*)**rug* - GE- *dra(de)*
 (on his) back -ed carry
 (= "(on his) back-carried")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



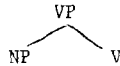
(115) *dat die esel die vrag dra*
 that the donkey the load carries

-er : vrag - dra -ER
 load carry -er

-end : ?vrag - dra -END(e)
 load carry -ing

ge- : *vrag - GE- dra(de)
 load -ed carry
 (= "load-carried")

(ii)



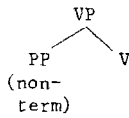
(116) dat die esel h swaar vrag dra
 that the donkey a heavy load carries

-er : ?swaar =vrag - dra -ER
 heavy load carry -er

-end : ?swaar =vrag - dra -END(e)
 heavy load carry -ing

ge- : *swaar - vrag - GE- dra(de)
 heavy load -ed carry
 (= "heavy load-carried")

(iii)



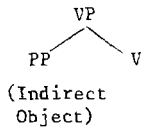
(117) dat die esel die vrag op sy rug dra.
 that the donkey the load on his back carries

-er : ?(op=sy)*rug - dra -ER
 (on his) back carry -er

-end : ?(op=sy)*rug - dra -END(e)
 (on his) back carry -ing

ge- : (op=sy)*rug - GE- dra(de)
 (on his) back -ed carry
 (= "(on his) back-carried")

(iv)



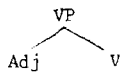
(118) *dat die kind die pakkies vir die ou dame dra*
 that the child the parcels for the old woman carries

-er : *(vir=die=)ou=dame - dra -ER
 (for the) old woman carry -er

-end : *(vir=die=)ou=dame - dra -END(e)
 (for the) old woman carry -ing

ge- : (vir=die=)*ou=dame - GE- dra(de)
 (for the) old woman -ed carry
 (= "(for the) old woman-carried")

(v)



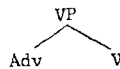
(119) *dat die esel die kos verpak dra*
 that the donkey the food packed carries

-er : *verpak - dra -ER
 packed carry -er

-end : *verpak - dra -END(e)
 packed carry -ing

ge- : verpak - GE- dra(de)
 packed -ed carry
 (= "packed-carried")

(vi)



(120) *dat die esel sy vrag maklik dra*
 that the donkey his load easily carries

-er : *maklik - dra -ER
 easily carry -er

-end : *maklik - dra -END(e)
 easily carry -ing

ge- : maklik - GE- dra(de)
 easily -ed carry
 (= "easily-carried")

d. Thematic relations(i) Accompaniment

(121) *dat die man die pakkies saam met die sambreeel dra*
 that the man the parcels together with the umbrella carries

-er : *saam = met =die=sambreeel - dra -ER
 together with the umbrella carry -er

-end : *saam = met =die=sambreeel - dra -END(e)
 together with the umbrella carry -ing

ge- : ?saam = met =die=sambreeel - GE- dra(de)
 together with the umbrella -ed carry
 (= "together with the umbrella-carried")

(ii) Agent

(122) *dat die toeris self sy tas dra om geld te bespaar*
 that the tourist himself his bag carries to money save

-er : *toeris - dra -ER
 tourist carry -er

-end : *toeris - dra -END(e)
 tourist carry -ing

ge- : *toeris - GE- dra(de)
 tourist -ed carry
 (= "tourist-carried")

(iii) Benefactive

(123) *dat die kind die pakkie vir die ou dame dra*
 that the child the parcel for the old woman carries

-er : *(vir=die=)ou=dame - dra -ER
 (for the) old woman carry -er

-end : *(vir=die=)ou=dame - dra -END(e)
 (for the) old woman carry -ing

ge- : (vir=die=)*ou=dame - GE- dra(de)
 (for the) old woman -ed carry
 (= "(for the) old woman-carried")

(iv) Duration

(124) *dat die man die kind vir 'n uur dra*
 that the man the child for an hour carries

- er : *(vir=h=)uur - dra -ER
 (for an) hour carry -er
- end : *(vir=h=)uur - dra -END(e)
 (for an) hour carry -ing
- ge- : (vir=h=)*uur - GE- dra(de)
 (for an) hour -ed carry
 (= "(for an) hour-carried")

(v) Goal

(125) *dat die man die kind na die skool toe dra*
 that the man the child to the school to carries

- er : *na=die=skool =toe - dra -ER
 to the school to carry -er
- end : *na=die=skool =toe - dra -END(e)
 to the school to carry -ing
- ge- : na=die=skool =toe - GE- dra(de)
 to the school to -ed carry
 (= "to the school to-carried")

(vi) Instrument

(126) *dat hulle die beseerde met 'n draagbaar dra*
 that they the injured with a stretcher carry

- er : *(met= h=)draagbaar - dra -ER
 (with a) stretcher carry -er
- end : *(met= h=)draagbaar - dra -END(e)
 (with a) stretcher carry -ing
- ge- : (met= h=)*draagbaar - GE- dra(de)
 (with a) stretcher -ed carry
 (= "(with a) stretcher-carried")

(vii) Location

(127) *dat die man die kind in sy arms dra*
 that the man the child in his arms carries

-er : ?(in=sy=)*arms - dra -ER
 (in his) arms carry -er

-end : ?(in=sy=)*arms - dra -END(e)
 (in his) arms carry -ing

ge- : (in=sy=)*arms - GE- dra(de)
 (in his) arms -ed carry
 (= "in his) arms-carried")

(vii) Modality

(128) *dat die esel die vrag maklik dra*
 that the donkey the load easily carries

-er : *maklik - dra -ER
 easily carry -er

-end : *maklik - dra -END(e)
 easily carry -ing

ge- : maklik - GE- dra(de)
 easily -ed carry
 (= "easily-carried")

(viii) Patient

(129) *dat die esel h vrag dra*
 that the donkey a load carries

-er : vrag - dra -ER
 load carry -er

-end : ?vrag - dra -END(e)
 load carry -ing

ge- : *vrag - GE- dra(de)
 load -ed carry
 (= "load-carried")

(ix) Source

(130) *dat die esel die vrag van die stasie af dra*
 that the donkey the load from the station off carries

-er : **van=die= stasie=af - dra -ER*
 from the station off carry -er

-end : **van =die= stasie=af - dra -END(e)*
 from the station off carry -ing

ge- : *van =die=stasie =af - GE- dra(de)*
 from the station off -ed carry
 (= "from the station off-carried")

(x) Temporality

(131) *dat die esel die vrag in die oggend dra*
 that the donkey the load in the morning carries

-er : **(in=die=)oggend - dra -ER*
 (in the) morning carry -er

-end : **(in=die=)oggend - dra -END(e)*
 (in the) morning carry -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)*oggend - GE- dra(de)*
 (in the) morning -ed carry
 (= "(in the) morning-carried")

(xi) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(132) *dat die esel dra*
 that the donkey carries

-er : **esel - dra -ER*
 donkey carry -er

-end : **esel - dra -END(e)*
 donkey carry -ing

ge- : ?*esel - GE- dra(de)*
 donkey -ed carry
 (= "donkey-carried")

(xii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(133) *dat die esel n vrag dra*
 that the donkey a load carries

-er : *vrag - dra -ER*
 load carry -er

-end : *?vrag - dra -END(e)*
 load carry -ing

ge- : **vrag - GE- dra(de)*
 load -ed carry
 (= "load-carried")

2.1.3.4 dra ("bear")

Simple derivations: *dra -ER*
 bear -er (= "thing which bears")

?dra -END(e)
 bear -ing (= "bearing")

GE- dra
 -ed bear (= "borne")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(134) *dat die boom lemoene dra*
 that the tree oranges bears

-er : *lemoen - dra -ER*
 orange bear -er

-end : *lemoen - dra -END(e)*
 orange bear -ing

ge- : **lemoen - GE- dra(de)*
 orange -ed bear
 (= "orange-borne")

(135) *dat die plant bessies dra*
 that the plant berries bears

-er : *bessie - dra -ER*
 berry bear -er

-end : *bessie - dra -END(e)*
 berry bear -ing

ge- : **bessie - GE- dra(de)*
 berry -ed bear
 (= "berry-borne")

(ii) Noun phrases

- (136) *dat die plant giftige bessies dra*
 that the plant poisonous berries bears
- er : ?*giftige* = *bessie* - *dra* -ER
 poisonous berry bear -er
- end : ?*giftige* = *bessie* - *dra* -END(e)
 poisonous berry bear -ing
- ge- : **giftige* = *bessie* - GE- *dra*(de)
 poisonous berry -ed bear
 (= "poisonous berry-borne")

(iii) Adjectives

- (137) *dat die boom die vrugte gesond dra*
 that the tree the fruit healthy bears
- er : **gesond* - *dra* -ER
 healthy bear -er
- end : **gesond* - *dra* -END(e)
 healthy bear -ing
- ge- : **gesond* - GE- *dra*(de)
 healthy -ed bear
 (= "healthy-borne")

(iv) Adverbs

- (138) *dat die boom jaarliks dra*
 that the tree annually bears
- er : **jaarliks* - *dra* -ER
 annually bear -er
- end : ?*jaarliks* - *dra* -END(e)
 annually bear -ing
- ge- : **jaarlike* - GE- *dra*(de)
 annually -ed bear
 (= "annually-borne")

- (139) *dat die boom goed dra*
 that the tree well bears

<u>-er</u>	:	*goed - dra -ER well bear -er
<u>-end</u>	:	?goed - dra -END(e) well bear -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*goed - GE- dra(de) well -ed bear (= "well-borne")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(140) dat die boom lemoene in die winter dra
that the tree oranges in the winter bears

-er : ?(in=die=)winter - dra -ER
(in the) winter bear -er

-end : (in=die=)winter - dra -END(e)
(in the) winter bear -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)winter - GE- dra(de)
(in the) winter -ed bear
(= "(in the) winter-borne")

(141) dat die plant bessies deur die jaar dra
that the plant berries throughout the year bears

-er : ?(deur = die=)*jaar - dra -ER
(throughout the) year bear -er

-end : (deur = die=)*jaar - dra -END(e)
(throughout the) year bear -ing

ge- : *(deur = die=)jaar - GE- dra(de)
(throughout the) year -ed bear
(= "(throughout the) year-borne")

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

(142) dat die boom dra
that the tree bears

-er : *boom - dra -ER
tree bear -er

-end : *boom - dra -END(e)
tree bear -ing

ge- : *boom - GE- dra(de)
tree -ed bear
(= "tree-borne")

(ii) Direct object

(143) dat die boom lemoene dra
that the tree oranges bears

-er : lemoen - dra -ER
orange bear -er

-end : lemoen - dra -END(e)
orange bear -ing

ge- : *lemoen - GE- dra(de)
orange -ed bear
(= "orange-borne")

(144) dat die plant bessies dra
that the plant berries bears

-er : bessie - dra -ER
berry bear -er

-end : bessie - dra -END(e)
berry bear -ing

ge- : *bessie - GE- dra(de)
berry -ed bear
(= "berry-borne")

(iii) Indirect object

(145) ?dat die boom vrugte vir die boer dra
that the tree fruit for the farmer bears

-er : *(vir=die=)boer - dra -ER
(for the) farmer - bear -er

-end : *(vir=die=)boer - dra -END(e)
(for the) farmer bear -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)boer - GE- dra(de)
(for the) farmer -ed bear
(= "(for the) farmer-borne")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(146) *dat die boom lemoene in die winter dra*
 that the tree oranges in the winter bears

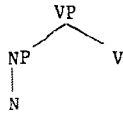
-er : ?(in=die=)winter - dra -ER
 (in the) winter bear -er

-end : (in=die=)winter - dra -END(e)
 (in the) winter bear -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)winter - GE- dra(de)
 (in the) winter -ed bear
 (= "(in the) winter-borne")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



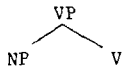
(147) *dat die boom lemoene dra*
 that the tree oranges bears

-er : lemoen - dra -ER
 orange bear -er

-end : lemoen - dra -END(e)
 orange bear -ing

ge- : *lemoen - GE- dra(de)
 orange -ed bear
 (= "orange-borne")

(ii)



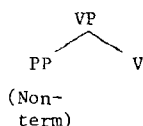
(148) *dat die plant giftige bessies dra*
 that the plant poisonous berries bears

-er : ?giftige = bessie - dra -ER
 poisonous berry bear -er

-end : ?giftige = bessie - GE- dra(de)
 poisonous berry -ed bear

ge- : **giftige = bessie - GE- dra(de)*
 poisonous berry -ed bear
 (= "poisonous berry-borne")

(iii)



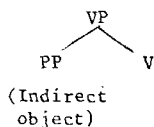
(149) *dat die boom net in die winter dra*
 that the tree only in the winter bears

-er : ?(*in=die=)winter - dra -ER*
 (in the) winter bear -er

-end : (*in=die=)winter - dra -END(e)*
 (in the) winter bear -ing

ge- : *(*in=die=)winter - GE- dra(de)*
 (in the) winter -ed bear
 (= "(in the) winter-borne")

(iv)



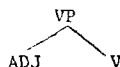
(150) *dat die boom vrugte vir die boer dra*
 that the tree fruit for the farmer bears

-er : *(*vir=die=)boer - dra -ER*
 (for the) farmer bear -er

-end : *(*vir=die=)boer - dra -END(e)*
 (for the) farmer bear -ing

ge- : *(*vir=die=)boer - GE- dra(de)*
 (for the) farmer -ed bear
 (= "(for the) farmer-borne")

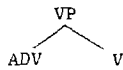
(v)



(151) *dat die boom sy vrugte gesond dra*
 that the tree its fruit healthy bears

- er : *gesond - dra -ER
healthy bear -er
- end : *gesond - dra -END(e)
healthy bear -ing
- ge- : *gesond - GE- dra(de)
healthy -ed bear
(= "healthy-borne")

(vi)



- (152) *dat die boom goed dra*
 that the tree well bears

- er : *goed - dra -ER
well bear -er
- end : *goed - dra -END(e)
well bear -ing
- ge- : *goed - GE- dra(de)
well -ed bear
(= "well-borne")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

- (153) *dat die plant bessies saam met die dorings dra*
 that the plant berries together with the thorns bears

- er : *saam = met =die=dorings - dra -ER
together with the thorns bear -er
- end : *saam = met =die=dorings - dra -END(e)
together with the thorns bear -ing
- ge- : *saam = met =die=dorings - GE- dra(de)
together with the thorns -ed bear
(= "together with the thorns-borne")

(ii) Agent

- (154) *dat die boom peule dra om voort te plant*
 that the tree pods bears to propagate

-er : *boom - dra -ER
tree bear -er

-end : *boom - dra -END(e)
tree bear -ing

ge- : *boom - GE- dra(de)
tree -ed bear
(= "tree-borne")

(iii) Benefactive

(155) ?dat die boom vrugte vir die boer dra
that the tree fruit for the farmer bears

-er : *(vir=die=)boer - dra -ER
(for the) farmer bear -er

-end : *(vir=die=)boer - dra -END(e)
(for the) farmer bear -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)boer - GE- dra(de)
(for the) farmer -ed bear
(= "(for the) farmer-borne")

(iv) Duration

(156) dat die boom sy vrugte net vir 'n maand dra
that the tree its fruit only for a month bears

-er : *(vir=h=)maand - dra -ER
(for a) month bear -er

-end : (vir=h=)*maand - dra -END(e)
(for a) month bear -ing

ge- : *(vir=h=)maand - GE- dra(de)
(for a) month -ed bear
(= "(for a) month-borne")

(v) Goal

(157) dat die plant peulse dra om voort te plant
that the plant pods bears to propagate

-er : *om=voort=te=plant - dra -ER
to propagate bear -er

-end : *om=voort=te=plant - dra -END(e)
to propagate bear -ing

ge- : *om=voort=te=plant - GE- dra(de)
to propagate -ed bear
(= "to propagate-borne")

(vi) Instrument

(158) ?dat die boom sy vrugte met sy takke dra.
that the tree its fruit with its branches bears

-er : *(met =sy =)takke - dra -ER
(with its) branches bear -er

-end : *(met =sy =)takke - dra -END(e)
(with its) branches bear -ing

ge- : *(met =sy =)takke - GE- dra(de)
(with its) branches -ed bear
(= "(with its) branches-borne")

(vii) Location

(159) dat die boom vrugte aan sy takke dra
that the tree fruit on its branches bears

-er : *(aan=sy =)takke - dra -ER
(on its) branches bear -er

-end : *(aan=sy =)takke - dra -END(e)
(on its) branches bear -ing

ge- : *(aan=sy =)takke - GE- dra(de)
(on its) branches -ed bear
(= "(on its) branches-borne")

(viii) Modality

(160) dat die boom goed dra
that the tree well bears

-er : *goed - dra -ER
well bear -er

-end : *goed - dra -END(e)
well bear -ing

ge- : *goed - GE- dra(de)
well -ed bear
(= "well-borne")

(ix) Patient

(161) dat die boom lemoene dra
that the tree oranges bears

-er : lemoen - dra -ER
orange bear -er

-end : lemoen - dra -END(e)
orange bear -ing

ge- : *lemoen - GE- dra(de)
orange -ed bear
(= "orange-borne")

(x) Source

(162) ?dat die boom vrugte van water dra
that the tree fruit from water bears

-er : *(van =)water - dra -ER
(from) water bear -er

-end : *(van =)water - dra -END(e)
(from) water bear -ing

ge- : *(van =)water - GE- dra(de)
(from) water -ed bear
(= "(from) water-borne")

(xi) Temporality

(163) dat die boom lemoene in die winter dra
that the tree oranges in the winter bears

-er : ?(in=die=)winter - dra -ER
(in the) winter bear -er

-end : (in=die=)winter - dra -END(e)
(in the) winter bear -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)winter - GE- dra(de)
(in the) winter -ed bear
(= "(in the) winter-borne")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(164) *dat die boom dra*
 that the tree bears

-er : *boom - dra -ER
 tree bear -er

-end : *boom - dra -END(e)
 tree bear -ing

ge- : *boom - GE- dra(de)
 tree -ed bear
 (= "tree-borne")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(165) *dat die plant bessies dra*
 that the plant berries bears

-er : *bessie - dra -ER*
 berry bear -er

-end : *bessie - dra -END(e)*
 berry bear -ing

ge- : **bessie - GE- dra(de)*
 berry -ed bear
 (= "berry-borne")

2.1.3.5 drink ("drink")

Simple derivations: *drink -ER*
 drink -er (= "drinker")
drink -END(e)
 drink -ing (= "drinking")
GE- drink(te)
 -ed drink (= "drunk")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(166) *dat die baba melk drink*
 that the baby milk drinks

-er : *melk - drink -ER*
 milk drink -er

-end : *melk - drink -END(e)*
 milk drink -ing

ge- : **melk - GE- drink(te)*
 milk -ed drink
 (= "milk-drunk")

(167) *dat Jan wyn drink*
 that Jan wine drinks

-er : *wyn - drink -ER*
 wine drink -er

-end : *wyn - drink -END(e)*
 wine drink -ing

ge- : **wyn - GE- drink(te)*
 wine -ed drink
 (= "wine-drunk")

(ii) Noun phrases

(168) *dat die baba afgeroomde melk drink*
 that the baby skimmed milk drinks

-er : *afgeroomde=melk - drink -ER*
 skimmed milk drink -er

-end : *afgeroomde=melk - drink -END(e)*
 skimmed milk drink -ing

ge- : **afgeroomde=melk - GE- drink(te)*
 skimmed milk -ed drink
 (= "skimmed milk-drunk")

(169) *dat fynproewers goeie wyn drink*
 that connoisseurs good wine drink

-er : *goeie=wyn - drink -ER*
 good wine drink -er

-end : *goeie=wyn - drink -END(e)*
 good wine drink -ing

ge- : **goeie=wyn - GE- drink(te)*
 good wine -ed drink
 (= "good wine-drunk")

(iii) Adjectives

(170) *dat die baba melk afgeroom drink*
 that the baby milk skimmed drinks

-er : *afgeroom - drink -ER
 skimmed drink -er

-end : *afgeroom - drink -END(e)
 skimmed drink -ing

ge- : *afgeroom - GE- drink(te)
 skimmed -ed drink
 (= "skimmed-drunk")

(iv) Adverbs

(171) *dat die baba sy melk gulsig drink*
 that the baby his milk greedily drinks

-er : *gulsig - drink -ER
 greedily drink -er

-end : gulsig - drink -END(e)
 greedily drink -ing

ge- : ?gulsig - GE- drink(te)
 greedily -ed drink
 (= "greedily-drunk")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(172) *dat die baba sy melk in die bed drink*
 that the baby his milk in the bed drinks

-er : ?(in=die=)*bed - drink -ER
 (in the) bed drink -er

-end : *(in=die=)bed - drink -END(e)
 (in the) bed drink -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)bed - GE- drink(te)
 (in the) bed -ed drink
 (= "(in the) bed-drunk")

(173) *dat die man 'n drankie in die kroeg drink*
 that the man a drink in the bar drinks

-er : (*in=die=)kroeg - drink -ER
 (in the) bar drink -er

-end : *(in=die=)kroeg - drink -END(e)
 (in the) bar drink -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)kroeg - GE- drink(te)
 (in the) bar -ed drink
 (= "(in the) bar-drunk")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(174) dat die alkoholis drink
 that the alcoholic drinks

-er : *alkoholis - drink -ER
 alcoholic drink -er

-end : *alkoholis - drink -END(e)
 alcoholic drink -ing

ge- : *alkoholis - GE- drink(te)
 alcoholic -ed drink
 (= "alcoholic-drunk")

(ii) Direct object

(175) dat die baba melk drink
 that the baby milk drinks

-er : melk - drink -ER
 milk - drink -er

-end : melk - drink -END(e)
 milk - drink -ing

ge- : *melk - GE- drink(te)
 milk -ed drink
 (= "milk-drunk")

(176) dat Jan wyn drink
 that Jan wine drinks

-er : wyn - drink -ER
 wine - drink -er

-end : wyn - drink -END(e)
wine drink -ing

ge- : *wyn - GE- drink(te)
wine -ed drink
(= "wine-drunk")

(iii) Indirect objects

(177) dat sy die medisyne vir haar gesondheid drink
that she the medicine for her health drinks

-er : *(vir=haar=)gesondheid - drink -ER
(for her) health drink -er

-end : *(vir=haar=)gesondheid - drink -END(e)
(for her) health drink -ing

ge- : *(vir=haar=)gesondheid - GE- drink(te)
(for her) health -ed drink
(= "(for her) health-drunk")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(178) dat die baba sy melk in die bed drink
that the baby his milk in the bed drinks

-er : ?(in=die=)*bed - drink -ER
(in the) bed drink -er

-end : *(in=die=)bed - drink -END(e)
(in the) bed drink -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)bed - GE- drink(te)
(in the) bed -ed drink
(= "(in the) bed-drunk")

(179) dat die man 'n drankie in die kroeg drink
that the man a drink in the bar drinks

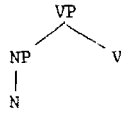
-er : *(in=die=)kroeg - drink -ER
(in the) bar drink -er

-end : *(in=die=)kroeg - drink -END(e)
(in the) bar drink -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)kroeg - GE- drink(te)
(in the) bar -ed drink
(= "(in the) bar-drunk")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



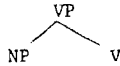
(180) *dat die baba melk drink*
 that the baby milk drinks

-er : *melk - drink -ER*
 milk drink -er

-end : *melk - drink -END(e)*
 milk drink -ing

ge- : **melk - GE- drink(te)*
 milk -ed drink
 (= "milk-drunk")

(ii)



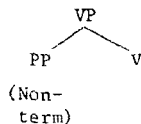
(181) *dat fynproewers goeie wyn drink*
 that connoisseurs good wine drink

-er : *goeie=wyn - drink -ER*
 good wine drink -er

-end : *goeie=wyn - drink -END(e)*
 good wine drink -ing

ge- : **goeie=wyn - GE- drink(te)*
 good wine -ed drink
 (= "good wine-drunk")

(iii)

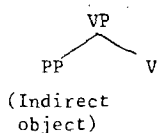


(182) *dat die man in die kroeg drink*
 that the man in the bar drinks

-er : *(*in=die=)kroeg - drink -ER*
 (in the) bar drink -er

- end : *(in=die=)kroeg - drink -END(e)
 (in the) bar drink -ing
- ge- : *(in=die=)kroeg - GE- drink(te)
 (in the) bar -ed drink
 (= "(in the) bar-drunk")

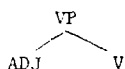
(iv)



- (183) *dat sy medisyne vir haar gesondheid drink*
 that she medicine for her health drinks

- er : *(vir=haar=)gesondheid - drink -ER
 (for her) health drink -er
- end : *(vir=haar=)gesondheid - drink -END(e)
 (for her) health drink -ing
- ge- : *(vir=haar=)gesondheid - GE- drink(te)
 (for her) health -ed drink
 (= "(for her) health-drunk")

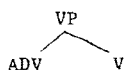
(v)



- (184) *dat die baba sy melk afgeroom drink*
 that the baby his milk skimmed drinks

- er : *afgeroom - drink -ER
 skimmed drink -er
- end : *afgeroom - drink -END(e)
 skimmed drink -ing
- ge- : *afgeroom - GE- drink(te)
 skimmed -ed drink
 (= "skimmed-drunk")

(vi)



- (185) *dat die hond sy water gulsig drink*
 that the dog his water greedily drinks

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>gulsig</i> - <i>drink</i> -ER greedily drink -er
<u>-end</u>	:	<i>gulsig</i> - <i>drink</i> -END(e) greedily drink -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	? <i>gulsig</i> - GE- <i>drink</i> (te) greedily -ed drink (= "greedily-drunk")

d. Thematic relations(i) Accompaniment

(186) *dat Jan saam met sy vriende drink*
that Jan together with his friends drinks

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>saam</i> = <i>met</i> = <i>sy</i> = <i>vriende</i> - <i>drink</i> -ER together with his friends drink -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>saam</i> = <i>met</i> = <i>sy</i> = <i>vriende</i> - <i>drink</i> -END(e) together with his friends drink -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>saam</i> = <i>met</i> = <i>sy</i> = <i>vriende</i> - GE- <i>drink</i> (te) together with his friends -ed drink (= "together with his friends-drunk")

(ii) Agent

(187) *dat die alkoholis drink om sy sake te vergeet*
that the alcoholic drinks to his worries forget

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>alkoholis</i> - <i>drink</i> -ER alcoholic drink -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>alkoholis</i> - <i>drink</i> -END(e) alcoholic drink -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>alkoholis</i> - GE- <i>drink</i> (te) alcoholic -ed drink (= "alcoholic-drunk")

(iii) Benefactive

(188) *dat die vrou die medisyne vir haar verkoue drink*
that the woman the medicine for her cold drinks

<u>-er</u>	:	*vir=haar=verkoue - drink -ER for her cold drink -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*vir=haar=verkoue - drink -END(e) for her cold drink -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*vir=haar=verkoue - GE- drink(te) for her cold -ed drink (= "for her cold-drunk")

(iv) Duration

(190)	dat die baba vir 'n kwartier drink	that the baby for a quarter of an hour drinks
<u>-er</u>	:	*(vir=h=)kwartier - drink -ER (for a) quarter of an hour drink -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(vir=h=)kwartier - drink -END(e) (for a) quarter of an hour drink -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(vir=h=)kwartier - GE- drink(te) (for a) quarter of an hour -ed drink (= "(for a) quarter of an hour-drunk")

(v) Goal

(191)	dat sy pille vir haar hoofpyn drink	that she pills for her headache drinks
<u>-er</u>	:	*(vir=haar=)hoofpyn - drink -ER (for her) headache drink -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(vir=haar=)hoofpyn - drink -END(e) (for her) headache drink -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	(vir=haar=)*hoofpyn - GE- drink(te) (for her) headache -ed drink (= "(for her) headache-drunk")

(vi) Instrument

(192)	dat die kind die koeldrank met 'n strooitjie drink	that the child the cooldrink with a straw drinks
<u>-er</u>	:	*(met=h=)strooitjie - drink -ER (with a) straw drink -er

- end : *(*met -n=*)*strooitjie* - *drink* -*END(e)*
 (with a) straw drink -ing
- ge- : ?(*met -n=*)**strooitjie* - *GE-* *drink(te)*
 (with a) straw -ed drink
 (= "(with a) straw-drunk")

(vii) Location

- (193) *dat die mans 'n drankie in die kroeg drink*
 that the men a drink in the bar drink
- er : *(*in=die=*)*kroeg* - *drink* -*ER*
 (in the) bar drink -er
- end : *(*in=die=*)*kroeg* - *drink* -*END(e)*
 (in the) bar drink -ing
- ge- : *(*in=die=*)*kroeg* - *GE-* *drink(te)*
 (in the) bar -ed drink
 (= "(in the) bar-drunk")

(viii) Modality

- (194) *dat die baba sy melk graag drink*
 that the baby his milk readily drinks
- er : **graag* - *drink* -*ER*
 readily drink -er
- end : **graag* - *drink* -*END(e)*
 readily drink -ing
- ge- : **graag* - *GE-* *drink(te)*
 readily -ed drink
 (= "readily-drunk")

(ix) Patient

- (195) *dat die man graag wyn drink*
 that the man readily wine drinks
- er : *wyn* - *drink* -*ER*
 wine drink -er
- end : *wyn* - *drink* -*END(e)*
 wine drink -ing

ge- : *wyn - GE- drink(te)
 wine -ed drink
 (= "wine-drunk")

(x) Source

(196) *dat hulle koffie uit die fles drink*
 that they coffee from the flask drink

-er : *(uit =die=)fles - drink -ER
 (from the) flask drink -er

-end : *(uit =die=)fles - drink -END(e)
 (from the) flask drink -ing

ge- : *(uit =die=)fles - GE- drink(te)
 (from the) flask -ed drink
 (= "(from the) flask-drunk")

(xi) Temporality

(197) *dat hulle 'n drankie in die aand drink*
 that they a drink in the evening drink

-er : *(in=die=)aand - drink -ER
 (in the) evening drink -er

-end : *(in=die=)aand - drink -END(e)
 (in the) evening drink -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)aand - GE- drink(te)
 (in the) evening -ed drink
 (= "(in the) evening-drunk")

(xii) Theme, (Subject of intransitive verb)

(198) *dat die baba drink*
 that the baby drinks

-er : *baba - drink -ER
 baby drink -er

-end : *baba - drink -END(e)
 baby drink -ing

ge- : *baba - GE- drink(te)
 baby -ed drink
 (= "baby-drunk")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(199) *dat die baba melk drink*
 that the baby milk drinks

-er : *melk - drink -ER*
 milk drink -er

-end : *melk - drink -END(e)*
 milk drink -ing

ge- : **melk - GE- drink(te)*
 milk -ed drink
 (= "milk-drunk")

2.1.3.6 lees ("read")

Simple derivations: *lees -ER*
 read -er (= "reader")

lees -END(e)
 read -ing (= "reading")

GE- lees(de)
 -ed read (= "read")

a. Syntactic categories(i) Nouns

(200) *dat die oom koerant lees*
 that the man newspaper reads

-er : *koerant - lees -ER*
 newspaper read -er

-end : *koerant - lees -END(e)*
 newspaper read -ing

ge- : **koerant - GE- lees(de)*
 newspaper -ed read
 (= "newspaper-read")

(201) *dat Jan h boek lees*
 that Jan a book reads

-er : *boek - lees -ER*
 book read -er

-end : boek - lees -END(e)
book read -ing

ge- : *boek - GE- lees(de)
book -ed read
(= "book-read")

(ii) Noun phrases

(202) dat Jan 'n dik boek lees
that Jan a thick book read

-er : *dik = boek - lees -ER
thick book read -er

-end : *dik = boek - lees -END(e)
thick book read -ing

ge- : *dik = boek - GE- lees(de)
thick book -ed read
(= "thick book-read")

(203) dat die oom die nuwe koerant lees
that the man the latest newspaper reads

-er : *nuwe = koerant - lees -ER
latest newspaper read -er

-end : *nuwe = koerant - lees -END(e)
latest newspaper read -ing

ge- : *nuwe = koerant - GE- lees(de)
latest newspaper -ed read
(= "latest newspaper-read")

(iii) Adjectives

(204) dat die oom die nuus vars lees
that the man the news fresh reads

-er : *vars - lees -ER
fresh read -er

-end : *vars - lees -END(e)
fresh read -ing

ge- : *vars - GE- lees(de)
fresh -ed read
(= "fresh-read")

(205) *dat die mense die boek stukkend lees*
 that the people the book to pieces read

-er : *stukkend - lees -ER
 to pieces read -er

-end : *stukkend - lees -END(e)
 to pieces read -ing

ge- : stukkend - GE- lees(de)
 to pieces -ed read
 (= "to pieces-read")

(iv) Adverbs

(206) *dat die seun die boek vinnig lees*
 that the boy the book fast reads

-er : *vinnig - lees -ER
 fast read -er

-end : vinnig - lees -END(e)
 fast read -ing

ge- : *vinnig - GE- lees(de)
 fast -ed read
 (= "fast-read")

(207) *dat Jan altyd saans lees*
 that Jan always at night reads

-er : *saans - lees -ER
 at night read -er

-end : *saans - lees -END(e)
 at night read -ing

ge- : *saans - GE- lees(de)
 at night -ed read
 (= "at night-read")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(208) *dat sy altyd op die trein lees*
 that she always on the train reads

-er : (op=die=) trein - lees -ER
 (on the) train read -er

-end : (op=die=)?trein - lees -END(e)
 (on the) train read -ing

ge- : *(op=die=)trein - GE- lees(de)
 (on the) train -ed read
 (= "(on the) train-read")

(209) dat owma met 'n bril lees
 that grandma with a glasses reads

-er : (met =n=)bril - lees -ER
 (with a) glasses read -er

-end : (met =n=)?bril - lees -END(e)
 (with a) glasses read -ing

ge- : *(met =n=)bril - GE- lees(de)
 (with a) glasses -ed read
 (= "(with a) glasses-read")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(210) dat die oom lees
 that the man reads

-er : *oom - lees -ER
 man read -er

-end : *oom - lees -END(e)
 man read -ing

ge- : *oom - GE- lees(de)
 man -ed read
 (= "man-read")

(211) dat Jan lees
 that Jan reads

-er : *Jan - lees -ER
 Jan read -er

-end : *Jan - lees -END(e)
 Jan - read -ing

ge- : *Jan - GE- lees(de)
 Jan -ed read
 (= "Jan-read")

(ii) Direct object

(212) *dat die oom sy koerant lees*
 that the man his paper reads

-er : koerant - lees -ER
 paper read -er

-end : koerant - lees -END(e)
 paper read -ing

ge- : *koerant - GE- lees(de)
 paper -ed read
 (= "paper-read")

(213) *dat Smit die nuus lees op die televisie*
 that Smit the news reads on the television

-er : nuus - lees -ER
 news read -er

-end : nuus - lees -END(e)
 news - read -ing

ge- : *nuus - GE- lees(de)
 news -ed read
 (= "news-read")

(iii) Indirect object

(214) *dat Piet stories vir die kleuter lees*
 that Piet stories for the toddler reads

-er : *(vir=die=)kleuter - lees -ER
 (for the) toddler read -er

-end : *(vir=die=)kleuter - lees -END(e)
 (for the) toddler read -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)kleuter - GE- lees(de)
 (for the) toddler -ed read
 (= "(for the) toddler-read")

(215) *dat hy die boek vir die blindes lees*
 that he the book for the blind reads

-er : *(vir=die=)blindes - lees -ER
 (for the) blind read -er

-end : *(vir=die=)blindes - lees -END(e)
 (for the) blind read -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)blindes - GE- lees(de)
 (for the) blind -ed read
 (= "(for the) blind-read")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(216) dat hy saams in die bed lees
 that he at night in the bed reads

-er : (in=die=)bed - lees -ER
 (in the) bed read -er

-end : (in=die=)?bed - lees -END(e)
 (in the) bed read -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)bed - GE- lees(de)
 (in the) bed -ed read
 (= "(in the) bed-read")

(217) dat die oom met 'n bril lees
 that the man with a glasses reads

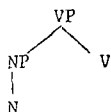
-er : (met =n=)bril - lees -ER
 (with a) glasses read -er

-end : (met =n=)?bril - lees -END(e)
 (with a) glasses read -ing

ge- : *(met =n=)bril - GE- lees(de)
 (with a) glasses -ed read
 (= "(with) glasses-read")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



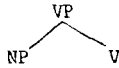
(218) dat die oom sy koerant lees
 that the man his paper reads

-er : koerant - lees -ER
 paper read -er

-end : koerant - lees -END(e)
 paper read -ing

ge- : *koerant - GE- lees(de)
 paper -ed read
 (= "paper-read")

(ii)



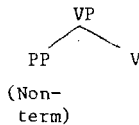
(219) dat Jan 'n dik boek lees
 that Jan a thick book reads

-er : *dik = boek - lees -ER
 thick book read -er

-end : *dik = boek - lees -END(e)
 thick book read -ing

ge- : *dik = boek - GE- lees(de)
 thick book -ed read
 (= "thick book-read")

(iii)



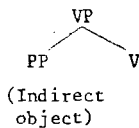
(220) dat sy die boek op die trein lees
 that she the book on the train reads

-er : (op=die=)trein - lees -ER
 (on the) train read -er

-end : (op=die=)?trein - lees -END(e)
 (on the) train read -ing

ge- : *(op=die=)trein - GE- lees(de)
 (on the) train -ed read
 (= "(on the) train-read")

(iv)



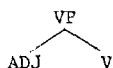
(221) *dat hy die storie vir die kleuter lees*
 that he the story for the toddler reads

-er : *(vir=die=)kleuter - lees -ER
 (for the) toddler read -er

-end : *(vir=die=)kleuter - lees -END(e)
 (for the) toddler read -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)kleuter - GE- lees(de)
 (for the) toddler -ed read
 (= "(for the) toddler-read")

(v)



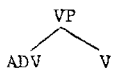
(222) *dat die oom die nuus vars lees*
 that the man the news fresh reads

-er : *vars - lees -ER
 fresh read -er

-end : *vars - lees -END(e)
 fresh read -ing

ge- : ?vars - GE- lees(de)
 fresh -ed read
 (= "fresh-read")

(vi)



(223) *dat die oom moeilik lees (sonder sy bril)*
 that the man with difficulty reads (without his glasses)

-er : *moeilik - lees -ER
 with difficulty read -er

-end : ?moeilik - lees -END(e)
 with difficulty read -ing

ge- : *moeilik - GE- lees(de)
 with difficulty -ed read
 (= "with difficulty-read")

d. Thematic relations(i) Accompaniment

(224) *dat die man die boek saam met sy vrou lees*
 that the man the book together with his wife reads

-er : *saam = met =sy =vrou - lees -ER
 together with his wife read -er

-end : *saam = met =sy =vrou - lees -END(e)
 together with his wife read -ing

ge- : *saam = met =sy =vrou - GE- lees(de)
 together with his wife -ed read
 (= "together with his wife-read")

(ii) Agent

(225) *dat die oor lees om die tyd om te kry*
 that the man reads to the time to pass get
 (= "to get the time pass")

-er : *oor - lees -ER
 man read -er

-end : *oor - lees -END(e)
 man read -ing

ge- : *oor - GE- lees(de)
 man -ed read
 (= "man-read")

(iii) Benefactive

(226) *dat Jan die boek vir die blindes lees*
 that Jan the book for the blind reads

-er : *(vir=die=)blindes - lees -ER
 (for the) blind read -er

-end : *(vir=die=)blindes - lees -END(e)
 (for the) blind read -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)blindes - GE- lees(de)
 (for the) blind -ed read
 (= "(for the) blind-read")

(iv) Duration

- (227) *dat elke kind vir tien minute lees*
 that every child for ten minutes reads
- er : *(vir-)tien-minute - lees -ER
 (for) ten minutes read -er
- end : *(vir-)tien-minute - lees -END(e)
 (for) ten minutes read -ing
- ge- : *(vir-)tien-minute - GE- lees(de)
 (for) ten minutes -ed read
 (= "(for) ten minutes-read")

(v) Goal/State

- (228) *dat die man die boek stukkend lees*
 that the man the book to pieces reads
- er : *stukkend - lees -ER
 to pieces read -er
- end : *stukkend - lees -END(e)
 to pieces read -ing
- ge- : stukkend - GE- lees(de)
 to pieces -ed read
 (= "to pieces-read")

(vi) Instrument

- (229) *dat oma met 'n bril lees*
 that grandma with a glasses reads
- er : (met =n-)bril - lees -ER
 (with a) glasses read -er
- end : (met =n-)?bril - lees -END(e)
 (with a) glasses read -ing
- ge- : *(met =n-)bril - GE- lees(de)
 (with a) glasses -ed read
 (= "(with a) glasses-read")

(vii) Location

(230) *dat die oom sy koerant op die trein lees*
 that the man his paper on the train reads

-er : (*op=die=!*)*trein - lees -ER*
 (on the) train read -er

-end : (*op=die=*)?*trein - lees -END(e)*
 (on the) train read -ing

ge- : **(op=die=)trein - GE- lees(de)*
 (on the) train -ed read
 (= "(on the) train-read")

(viii) Modality

(231) *dat die kind graag lees*
 that the child willingly reads

-er : **graag - lees -ER*
 willingly read -er

-end : **graag - lees -END(e)*
 willingly read -ing

ge- : **graag - GE- lees(de)*
 willingly -ed read
 (= "willingly-read")

(ix) Patient

(232) *dat die oom sy koerant lees*
 that the man his paper reads

-er : *koerant - lees -ER*
 paper read -er

-end : *koerant - lees -END(e)*
 paper read -ing

ge- : **koerant - GE- lees(de)*
 paper -ed read
 (= "paper-read")

(x) Source

(234) *dat die voordraer gedigte uit die bundel lees*
 that the reciter poems from the anthology reads

-er : ?(uit= die=)*bundel - lees -ER
 (from the) anthology read -er

-end : ?(uit =die=)*bundel - lees -END(e)
 (from the) anthology read -ing

ge- : *(uit= die=)bundel - GE- lees(de)
 (from the) anthology -ed read
 (= "(from the) anthology-read")

(xi) Temporality

(235) *dat hy net in die aand lees*
 that he only in the evening reads

-er : *(in=die=)aand - lees -ER
 (in the) evening read -er

-end : *(in=die=)aand - lees -END(e)
 (in the) evening read -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)aand - GE- lees(de)
 (in the) evening -ed read
 (= "(in the) evening-read")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(236) *dat ouma lees*
 that grandma reads

-er : *ouma - lees -ER
 grandma read -er

-end : *ouma - lees -END(e)
 grandma read -ing

ge- : *ouma - GE- lees(de)
 grandma -ed read
 (= "grandma-read")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)(237) *dat Jan die nuus lees op die televisie*
that Jan the news reads on the television-er : *nuus - lees -ER*
news read -er-end : *nuus - lees -END(e)*
news read -ingge- : **nuus - GE- leeside)*
news -ed read
(= "news-read")2.1.3.7 praat ("talk"/"speak")Simple derivations: *praat -ER*
talk -er/speak -er
(= "talker"/"speaker")
praat -END(e)
talk -ing/speak -ing
(= "talking"/"speaking")
?GE- praat
-ed talk/-ed speak
(= "talked"/"spoken")a. Syntactic categories(i) Nouns(238) *dat studente soms onsin praat*
that students sometimes nonsense talk-er : *onsin - praat -ER*
nonsense talk -er-end : **onsin - praat -END(e)*
nonsense talk -ingge- : **onsin - GE- praat(e)*
nonsense -ed talk
(= "nonsense-talked")(239) *dat hy dikwels snert praat*
that he often rubbish talks

<u>-er</u>	:	<i>snert - praat</i>	<i>-ER</i>
		rubbish talk	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	<i>*snert - praat</i>	<i>-END(e)</i>
		rubbish talk	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	<i>*snert - GE- praat(e)</i>	
		rubbish -ed talk	
		(= "rubbish-talked")	

(ii) Noun phrases

(240) *dat Marie n paar tale praat*
 that Marie a few languages speaks

<u>-er</u>	:	<i>*paar=tale - praat</i>	<i>-ER</i>
		few languages speak	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	<i>*paar=tale - praat</i>	<i>-END(e)</i>
		few languages speak	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	<i>*paar=tale - GE- praat(e)</i>	
		few languages -ed speak	
		(= "few languages-spoken")	

(241) *dat studente soms baie onsin praat*
 that students sometimes a lot of nonsense talk

<u>-er</u>	:	<i>*baie = onsin - praat</i>	<i>-ER</i>
		a lot of nonsense talk	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	<i>*baie = onsin - praat</i>	<i>-END(e)</i>
		a lot of nonsense talk	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	<i>*baie = onsin - GE- praat(e)</i>	
		a lot of nonsense -ed talk	
		(= "a lot of nonsense-talked")	

(iii) Adjectives

(242) *dat sy ons kapot praat*
 that she us tired talks

<u>-er</u>	:	<i>*kapot - praat</i>	<i>-ER</i>
		tired talk	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	<i>*kapot - praat</i>	<i>-END(e)</i>
		tired talk	-ing

ge- : ?*kapot* - *GE-* *praat(e)*
 tired -ed talk
 (= "tired-talked")

(iv) Adverbs

(243) *dat die papegaai goed praat*
 that the parrot well speaks

-er : **goed* - *praat* -*ER*.
 well speak -er

-end : **goed* - *praat* -*END(e)*
 well speak -ing

ge- : **goed* - *GE-* *praat(e)*
 well -ed speak
 (= "well-spoken")

(244) *dat die kind lelik praat*
 that the child vulgarly speaks

-er : *lelik* - *praat* -*ER*
 vulgarly speak -er

-end : *lelik* - *praat* -*END(e)*
 vulgarly speak -ing

ge- : **lelik* - *GE-* *praat(e)*
 vulgarly -ed speak
 (= "vulgarly-spoken")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(245) *dat die tannie baie op die telefoon praat*
 that the woman a lot on the telephone speaks

-er : (*op=die=*)?*telefoon* - *praat* -*ER*
 (on the) telephone speak -er

-end : (*op=die=*)**telefoon* - *praat* -*END(e)*
 (on the) telephone speak -ing

ge- : *(*op=die=*)*telefoon* - *GE-* *praat(e)*
 (on the) telephone -ed speak
 (= "(on the) telephone-spoken")

(246) *dat die kinders graag in die klas praat*
 that the children readily in the class talk

-er : (in=die=)klas - praat -ER
 (in the) class talk -er

-end : (in=die=)*klas - praat -END(e)
 (in the) class talk -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)klas - GE- praat(e)
 (in the) class -ed talk
 (= "(in the) class-talked")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(247) dat die papegaai praat
 that the parrot speaks

-er : *papegaai - praat -ER
 parrot speak -er

-end : *papegaai - praat -END(e)
 parrot speak -ing

ge- : *papegaai - GE- praat(e)
 parrot -ed speak
 (= "parrot-spoken")

(248) dat die studente praat
 that the students talk

-er : *studente - praat -ER
 students talk -er

-end : *studente - praat -END(e)
 students talk -ing

ge- : *studente - GE- praat(e)
 students -ed talk
 (= "students-talked")

(ii) Direct object

(249) dat die studente onsin praat
 that the students nonsense talk

-er : onsin - praat -ER
 nonsense talk -er

-end : **onsin* - *praat* -*END(e)*
nonsense talk -ing

ge- : **onsin* - *GE-* *praat(e)*
nonsense -ed talk
(= "nonsense-talked")

(250) *dat die kind altyd net die waarheid praat*
that the child always only the truth speaks

-er : *waarheid* - *praat* -*ER*
truth speak -er

-end : **waarheid* - *praat* -*END(e)*
truth speak -ing

ge- : **waarheid* - *GE-* *praat(e)*
truth -ed speak
(= "truth-spoken")

(iii) Indirect object

(251) *dat die leerlinge vir die redenaarsbeker praat*
that the pupils for the debater's trophy speak

-er : *(*vir=die=*)*redenaarsbeker* - *praat* -*ER*
(for the) debater's trophy speak -er

-end : *(*vir=die=*)*redenaarsbeker* - *praat* -*END(e)*
(for the) debater's trophy speak -ing

ge- : *(*vir=die=*)*redenaarsbeker* - *GE-* *praat(e)*
(for the) debater's trophy -ed speak
(= "(for the) debater's trophy-spoken")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(252) *dat die tannie graag op die telefoon praat*
that the woman a lot on the telephone speaks

-er : (*op=die=*)*telefoon* - *praat* -*ER*
(on the) telephone speak -er

-end : (*op=die=*)**telefoon* - *praat* -*END(e)*
(on the) telephone speak -ing

ge- : *(*op=die=*)*telefoon* - *GE-* *praat(e)*
(on the) telephone -ed speak
(= "(on the) telephone-spoken")

(253) *dat die studente in die klas praat*
 that the students in the class talk

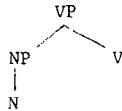
-er : (in=die=)?klas - praat -ER
 (in the) class talk -er

-end : (in=die=)*klas - praat -END(e)
 (in the) class talk -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)klas - GE- praat(e)
 (in the) class -ed talk
 (= "(in the) class-talked")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



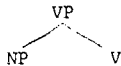
(254) *dat die studente onsin praat*
 that the students nonsense talk

-er : onsin - praat -ER
 nonsense talk -er

-end : *onsin - praat -END(e)
 nonsense talk -ing

ge- : *onsin - GE- praat(e)
 nonsense -ed talk
 (= "nonsense-talked")

(ii)



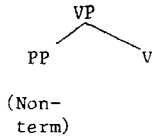
(255) *dat Marie vreemde tale praat*
 that Marie foreign languages speaks

-er : *vreemde=tale - praat -ER
 foreign languages speak -er

-end : *vreemde=tale - praat -END(e)
 foreign languages speak -ing

ge- : *vreemde=tale - GE- praat(e)
 foreign languages -ed speak
 (= "foreign languages-spoken")

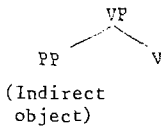
(iii)



(256) *dat die tannie graag op die telefoon praat*
 that the woman a lot on the telephone speaks

- er : *(op=die)?telefoon - praat -ER*
 (on the) telephone speak -er
- end : *(op=die)*telefoon - praat -END(e)*
 (on the) telephone speak -ing
- ge- : **(op=die)telefoon - GE- praat(e)*
 (on the) telephone -ed speak
 (= "(on the) telephone-spoken")

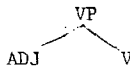
(iv)



(257) *dat die leerlinge vir die redenaarsbeker praat*
 that the pupils for the debater's trophy speak

- er : **(vir=die)redenaarsbeker - praat -ER*
 (for the) debater's trophy speak -er
- end : **(vir=die)redenaarsbeker - praat -END(e)*
 (for the) debater's trophy speak -ing
- ge- : **(vir=die)redenaarsbeker - GE- praat(e)*
 (for the) debater's trophy -ed speak
 (= "(for the) debater's trophy-spoken")

(v)



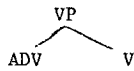
(258) *dat die kuiermense ons kapot praat*
 that the guests us tired talk

- er : **kapot - praat -ER*
 tired talk -er

-end : **kapot* - *praat* -*END(e)*
 tired talk -ing

ge- : ?*kapot* - *GE-* *praat(e)*
 tired -ed talk
 (= "tired-talked")

(vi)



(259) *dat die minister vanaand hier praat*
 that the minister tonight here speaks

-er : **hier* - *praat* -*ER*
 here speak -er

-end : **hier* - *praat* -*END(é)*
 here speak -ing

ge- : **hier* - *GE-* *praat(e)*
 here -ed speak
 (= "here-spoken")

(260) *dat die seun soms lelik praat*
 that the boy sometimes vulgarly talks

-er : *lelik* - *praat* -*ER*
 vulgarly talk -er

-end : *lelik* - *praat* -*END(e)*
 vulgarly talk -ing

ge- : **lelik* - *GE-* *praat(e)*
 vulgarly -ed talk
 (= "vulgarly-talked")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(261) *dat die seun saam met sy suster met sy*
 that the boy sometimes with his sister with his
pa praat
 father talks

-er : **saam* = *met* =*sy* =*suster* - *praat* -*ER*
 together with his sister talk -er

- end : *saam = met =sy =suster - praat -END(e)
 together with his sister talk -ing
- ge- : *saam = met =sy =suster - GE- praat(e)
 together with his sister -ed talk
 (= "together with his sister-talked")

(ii) Agent

- (262) dat die papegaai praat om aandag te trek
 that the parrot speaks to attention draw

- er : *papegaai - praat -ER
 parrot speak -er
- end : *papegaai - praat -END(e)
 parrot speak -ing
- ge- : *papegaai - GE- praat(e)
 parrot -ed speak
 (= "parrot-spoken")

(iii) Benefactive

- (263) dat die student vir sy koshuis praat in die
 that the student for his residence speaks in the
 kompetisie
 competition

- er : *(vir=sy=)koshuis - praat -ER
 (for his) residence speak -er
- end : ?(vir=sy=)*koshuis - praat -END(e)
 (for his) residence speak -ing
- ge- : *(vir=sy=)koshuis - GE- praat(e)
 (for his) residence -ed speak
 (= "(for his) residence-spoken")

(iv) Duration

- (264) dat die minister vir 'n uur praat
 that the minister for an hour speaks

- er : *(vir=h=)uur - praat -ER
 (for an) hour talk -er

-end : *(vir=h)uur - praat -END(e)
 (for an) hour speak -ing

ge- : *(vir=h)uur - GE- praat(e)
 (for an) hour -ed speak
 (= "(for an) hour-spoken")

(v) Goal

(265) *dat die motoris praat om wakker te bly*
 that the motorist talks to awake keep

-er : *om = wakker = te = bly - praat -ER
 to awake keep talk -er

-end : *om = wakker = te = bly - praat -END(e)
 to awake keep talk -ing

ge- : *om = wakker = te = bly - GE- praat(e)
 to awake keep -ed talk
 (= "to awake keep-talked")

(vi) Instrument

(266) *dat 'n mens met jou stembande praat*
 that a person with his vocal chords speaks

-er : *(met=jou=)stembande - praat -ER
 (with his) vocal chords speak -er

-end : *(met=jou=)stembande - praat -END(e)
 (with his) vocal chords speak -ing

ge- : *(met=jou=)stembande - GE- praat(e)
 (with his) vocal chords -ed speak
 (= "(with his) vocal chords-spoken")

(vii) Location

(267) *dat die oom op die vergadering praat*
 that the man on the meeting speaks

-er : (op=die=)*vergadering - praat -ER
 (on the) meeting speak -er

-end : (op=die=)*vergadering - praat -END(e)
 (on the) meeting speak -ing

ge- : *(op=die=)vergadering - GE- praat(e)
 (on the) meeting -ed speak
 (= "(on the) meeting-spoken")

(viii) Modality

(268) dat die seuntjie lelik praat
 that the little boy vulgarly speaks

-er : lelik - praat -ER
 vulgarly speak -er

-end : lelik - praat -END(e)
 vulgarly speak -ing

ge- : *lelik - GE- praat(e)
 vulgarly -ed speak
 (= "vulgarly-spoken")

(ix) Patient

(269) dat die studente onsin praat
 that the students nonsense talk

-er : onsin - praat -ER
 nonsense talk -er

-end : *onsin - praat -END(e)
 nonsense talk -ing

ge- : *onsin - GE- praat(e)
 nonsense -ed talk
 (= "nonsense-talked")

(270) dat die meisie h paar tale praat
 that the girl a few languages speaks

-er : *h=paar=tale - praat -ER
 a few languages speak -er

-end : *h=paar=tale - praat -END(e)
 a few languages speak -ing

ge- : *h=paar=tale - GE- praat(e)
 a few languages -ed speak
 (= "a few languages-spoken")

(x) Source

(271) *dat die kind uit sy hart uit praat*
 that the child out of his heart talks

-er : *(uit=sy-)hart uit - praat -ER
 (out of his) heart talk -er

-end : *(uit=sy-)hart uit - praat -END(e)
 (out of his) heart talk -ing

ge- : *(uit=sy-)hart uit - GE- praat(e)
 (out of his) heart -ed talk
 (= "(out of his) heart-talked")

(xi) Temporality

(272) *dat die twee net saans praat*
 that the two only at night talk

-er : *saans - praat -ER
 at night talk -er

-end : *saans - praat -END(e)
 at night talk -ing

ge- : *saans - GE- praat(e)
 at night -ed talk
 (= "at night-talked")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(273) *dat die papegaai praat*
 that the parrot speaks

-er : *papegaai - praat -ER
 parrot speak -er

-end : *papegaai - praat -END(e)
 parrot speak -ing

ge- : *papegaai - GE- praat(e)
 parrot -ed speak
 (= "parrot-spoken")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(274) *dat die oom snert praat*
 that the man rubbish talks

-er : *snert - praat -ER*
 rubbish talk -er

-end : **snert - praat -END(e)*
 rubbish talk -ing

ge- : **snert - GE- praat(e)*
 rubbish -ed talk
 (= "rubbish-talked")

2.1.3.8 rook ("smoke")

Simple derivations: *rook -ER*
 smoke -er (= "smoker")

rook -END(e)
 smoke -ing (= "smoking")

GE- rook(te)
 -ed smoke (= "smoked")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(275) *dat die oom 'n sigaar rook*
 that the man a cigar smokes

-er : *sigaar - rook -ER*
 cigar smoke -er

-end : *sigaar - rook -END(e)*
 cigar smoke -ing

ge- : **sigaar - GE- rook(te)*
 cigaar -ed smoke
 (= "cigar-smoked")

(276) *dat die jeug dagga rook*
 that young people hemp smokes

-er : *dagga - rook -ER*
 hemp smoke -er

-end : *dagga - rook -END(e)*
 hemp smoke -ing

ge- : **dagga - GE- rook(te)*
 hemp -ed smoke
 (= "hemp-smoked")

(ii) Noun phrases

- (277) *dat die oom h dik sigaar rook*
 that the man a thick cigar smokes
- er : *dik=sigaar - rook -ER*
 thick cigar smoke -er
- end : *?dik=sigaar - rook -END(e)*
 thick cigar smoke -ing
- ge- : **dik=sigaar - GE- rook(te)*
 thick cigar -ed smoke
 (= "thick cigar-smoked")

(iii) Adjectives

- (278) *dat die jeug dagga gedroog rook*
 that young people hemp dried smokes
- er : **gedroog - rook -ER*
 dried smoke -er
- end : **gedroog - rook -END(e)*
 dried smoke -ing
- ge- : **gedroog - GE- rook(te)*
 dried -ed smoke
 (= "dried-smoked")

(iv) Adverbs

- (279) *dat die oom sy sigare smaaklik rook*
 that the man his cigars with relish smokes
- er : **smaaklik - rook -ER*
 with relish smoke -er
- end : **smaaklik - rook -END(e)*
 with relish smoke -ing
- ge- : **smaaklik - GE- rook(te)*
 with relish -ed smoke
 (= "with relish-smoked")
- (280) *dat hy dagga gereeld rook*
 that he hemp regularly smokes
- er : **gereeld - rook -ER*
 regularly smoke -er

-end : *gereeld - rook -END(e)
regularly smoke -ing

ge- : *gereeld - GE- rook(te)
regularly -ed smoke
(= "regular-smoked")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(281) dat die seuns agter die klipmuur rook
that the boys behind the stone wall smoke

-er : (agter =die=) *klipmuur - rook -ER
(behind the) stone wall smoke -er

-end : (agter =die=) *klipmuur - rook -END(e)
(behind the) stone wall smoke -ing

ge- : *(agter =die=) klipmuur - GE- rook(te)
(behind the) stone wall -ed smoke
(= "(behind the) stone wall-smoked")

(282) dat die oom sy pyp op die stoep rook
that the man his pipe on the veranda smokes

-er : (op=die=) stoep - rook -ER
(on the) veranda smoke -er

-end : (op=die=) *stoep - rook -END(e)
(on the) veranda smoke -ing

ge- : *(op=die=) stoep - GE- rook(te)
(on the) veranda -ed smoke
(= "(on the) veranda-smoked")

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

(283) dat die oom rook
that the man smokes

-er : *oom - rook -ER
man smoke -er

-end : *oom - rook -END(e)
man smoke -ing

ge- : *oom - GE- rook(te)
man -ed smoke
(= "man-smoked")

(ii) Direct object

(284) *dat die oom 'n sigaar rook*
that the man a cigar smokes

-er : sigaar - rook -ER
cigar smoke -er

-end : sigaar - rook -END(e)
cigar smoke -ing

ge- : *sigaar - GE- rook(te)
cigar -ed smoke
(= "cigar-smoked")

(285) *dat die student dagga rook*
that the student hemp smokes

-er : dagga - rook -ER
hemp smoke -er

-end : dagga - rook -END(e)
hemp smoke -ing

ge- : *dagga - GE- rook(te)
hemp -ed smoke
(= "hemp-smoked")

(iii) Indirect object

(286) *dat die vrou vir haar senuwees rook*
that the woman for her nerves smokes

-er : (vir=haar=)?senuwees - rook -ER
(for her) nerves smoke -er

-end : ?(vir=haar=)*senuwees - rook -END(e)
(for her) nerves smoke -ing

ge- : *(vir=haar=)senuwees - GE- rook(te)
(for her) nerves -ed smoke
(= "(for her) nerves-smoked")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(287) *dat die oom op die stoep rook*
 that the man on the veranda smokes

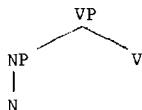
- er : (op=die=)stoep - rook -ER
 (on the) veranda smoke -er
- end : (op=die=)*stoep - rook -END(e)
 (on the) veranda smoke -ing
- ge- : *(op=die=)stoep - GE- rook(te)
 (on the) veranda -ed smoke
 (= "on the) veranda-smoked")

(288) *dat hy altyd in die bed rook*
 that he always in the bed smokes

- er : (in=die=)*bed - rook -ER
 (in the) bed smoke -er
- end : (in=die=)*bed - rook -END(e)
 (in the) bed smoke -ing
- ge- : *(in=die=)bed - GE- rook(te)
 (in the) bed -ed smoke
 (= "(in the) bed-smoked")

c. Structural adjacency

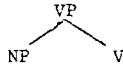
(i)



(289) *dat die oom n sigaar rook*
 that the man a cigar smokes

- er : sigaar - rook -ER
 cigar smoke -er
- end : sigaar - rook -END(e)
 cigar smoke -ing
- ge- : *sigaar - GE- rook(te)
 cigar -ed smoke
 (= "cigar-smoked")

(ii)



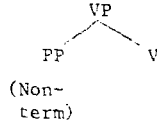
(290) *dat die oom n dik sigaar rook*
that the man a thick cigar smokes

-er : *dik = sigaar - rook -ER*
thick cigar smoke -er

-end : *?dik = sigaar - rook -END(e)*
thick cigar smoke -ing

ge- : **dik = sigaar - GE- rook(te)*
thick cigar -ed smoke
 (= "thick cigar-smoked")

(iii)



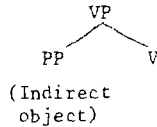
(291) *dat die seuns agter die klipmuur rook*
that the boys behind the stone wall smoke

-er : *(agter -die=)*klipmuur - rook -ER*
(behind the) stone wall smoke -er

-end : *(agter=die=)*klipmuur - rook -END(e)*
(behind the) stone wall smoke -ing

ge- : **(agter -die=)klipmuur - GE- rook(te)*
(behind the) stone wall -ed smoke
 (= "(behind the) stone wall-smoked")

(iv)



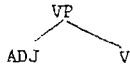
(292) *dat die vrou vir haar senuwees rook*
that the woman for her nerves smokes

-er : *(vir=haar=)?senuwees - rook -ER*
(for her) nerves smoke -er

-end : *?(vir=haar=)*senuwees - rook -END(e)*
(for her) nerves smoke -ing

ge- : *(vir=haar=) *semuwees* - GE- *rook(te)*
 (for her) nerves -ed smoke
 (= "(for her) nerves-smoked")

(v)



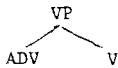
(293) *dat die mense dagga gedroog rook*
 that the people hemp dried smoke

-er : **gedroog* - *rook* -ER
 dried smoke -er

-end : **gedroog* - *rook* -END(e)
 dried smoke -ing

ge- : **gedroog* - GE- *rook(te)*
 dried -ed smoke
 (= "dried-smoked")

(vi)



(294) *dat die om sy pyp graag rook*
 that the man his pipe gladly smokes

-er : **grag* - *rook* -ER
 gladly smoke -er

-end : **grag* - *rook* -END(e)
 gladly smoke -ing

ge- : **grag* - GE- *rook(te)*
 gladly -ed smoke
 (= "gladly-smoked")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(295) *dat die vrou saam met haar man rook*
 that the woman in company with her husband smokes

-er : **saam = met = haar = man* - *rook* -ER
 in company with her husband smoke -er

- end : *saam = met = haar = man - rook -END(e)
 in company with her husband smoke -ing
- ge- : *saam = met = haar = man - GE- rook(te)
 in company with her husband -ed smoke
 (= "in company with her husband-smoked")

(ii) Agent

- (296) dat die meisie rook om maer te bly
 that the girl smokes to slim keep

- er : *meisie - rook -ER
 girl smoke -er
- end : *meisie - rook -END(e)
 girl smoke -ing
- ge- : *meisie - GE- rook(te)
 girl -ed smoke
 (= "girl-smoked")

(iii) Benefactive

- (297) dat die vrou vir haar senuwees rook
 that the woman for her nerves smokes

- er : *(vir=haar=)?senuwees - rook -ER
 (for her) nerves smoke -er
- end : ?(vir=haar=)*senuwees - rook -END(e)
 (for her) nerves smoke -ing
- ge- : *(vir=haar=)senuwees - GE- rook(te)
 (for her) nerves -ed smoke
 (= "(for her) nerves-smoked")

(iv) Duration

- (298) dat die oom vir 'n halfuur rook
 that the man for a half - hour smokes

- er : *(vir='n=)halfuur - rook -ER
 (for a) half - hour smoke -er
- end : *(vir='n=)halfuur - rook -END(e)
 (for a) half - hour smoke -ing

ge- : *(vir=h)halfuur - GE- rook(te)
 (for a) half - hour -ed smoke
 (= "(for a) half-hour-smoked")

(v) Goal

(299) *dat die meisie met die oog op 'n rekord rook*
 that the girl with a view to (establishing) a record smokes

-er : *met = die = oog = op = 'n = rekord - rook -ER
 with a view to (establishing) a record smoke -er

-end : *met = die = oog = op = 'n = rekord - rook -END(e)
 with a view to (establishing) a record smoke -ing

ge- : *met = die = oog = op = 'n = rekord - GE- rook(te)
 with a view to (establishing) a record -ed smoke
 (= "with a view to (establishing) a record-smoked")

(vi) Instrument

(300) *dat die oom met 'n pyp rook*
 that the man with a pipe smokes

-er : (?met = 'n)pyp - rook -ER
 (with a) pipe smoke -er

-end : (*met = 'n)pyp - rook -END(e)
 (with a) pipe smoke -ing

ge- : *(met = 'n)pyp - GE- rook(te)
 (with a) pipe -ed smoke
 (= "(with a) pipe-smoked")

(vii) Location

(301) *dat oupa altyd op die stoep rook*
 that grandfather always on the veranda smokes

-er : (op=die)stoep - rook -ER
 (on the) veranda smoke -er

-end : (op=die)*stoep - rook -END(e)
 (on the) veranda smoke -ing

ge- : *(op=die)stoep - GE- rook(te)
 (on the) veranda -ed smoke
 (= "(on the) veranda-smoked")

(viii) Modality

- (301) *dat die man gereeld rook*
 that the man regularly smokes
- er : *gereeld - rook -ER
 regularly smoke -er
- end : *gereeld - rook -END(e)
 regularly smoke -ing
- ge- : *gereeld - GE- rook(te)
 regularly -ed smoke
 (= "regularly-smoked")

(ix) Patient

- (302) *dat die om 'n sigaar rook*
 that the man a cigar smokes
- er : sigaar - rook -ER
 cigar smoke -er
- end : sigaar - rook -END(e)
 cigar smoke -ing
- ge- : *sigaar - GE- rook(te)
 cigar -ed smoke
 (= "cigar-smoked")

(x) Source

- (303) *dat rokers net uit gewoonte rook*
 that smokers only from habit smokes
- er : (*uit=)gewoonte - rook -ER
 (from) habit smoke -er
- end : ?(*uit=)*gewoonte - rook -END(e)
 (from) habit smoke -ing
- ge- : *(*uit=)gewoonte - GE- rook(te)
 (from) habit -ed smoke
 (= "(from) habit-smoked")

(xi) Temporality

(304) *dat die oom net by geleentheid rook*
 that the man only on occasion smokes

-er : (by-)geleentheid - rook -ER
 (on) occasion smoke -er

-end : ?(by-)*geleentheid - rook -END(e)
 (on) occasion smoke -ing

ge- : *(by-)geleentheid - GE- rook(te)
 (on) occasion -ed smoke
 (= "(on) occasion-smoked")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(305) *dat die meisie rook*
 that the girl smokes

-er : *meisie - rook -ER
 girl smoke -er

-end : *meisie - rook -END(e)
 girl smoke -ing

ge- : *meisie - GE- rook(te)
 girl -ed smoke
 (= "girl-smoked")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(306) *dat baie jongmense dagga rook*
 that many young people hemp smoke

-er : dagga - rook -ER
 hemp smoke -er

-end : dagga - rook -END(e)
 hemp smoke -ing

ge- : *dagga - GE- rook(te)
 hemp -ed smoke
 (= "hemp-smoked")

2.2 Category II: Intransitive verbs

According to Bach (1974:106) verbs that cannot take a nominal complement, are intransitive verbs. Akmajian and Heny (1975:92) characterize intransitive verbs as verbs which "cannot be followed by an NP in an active sentence".

In this paper, a distinction is made between (i) intransitive verbs which can take a "bare" object, viz. *dans* ("dance"), *groei* ("grow"), *loop* ("walk"), *skaats* ("skate"), *slaap* ("sleep"), *staan* ("stand") and *werk* ("work") and (ii) the intransitive verbs *pyn* ("ache") and *rook* ("smoke").⁶⁾

In §2.2.1 four tables are given which summarize the possible verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of intransitive verbs. §2.2.2 contains the generalizations which can be drawn from the tables, followed by the analyses of the nine verbs mentioned above.

2.2.1 Tables

Table (307) below shows the verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of the various syntactic categories. Table (308) contains the verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of the different grammatical functions. Table (310) contains the verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of some thematic relations. Table (309) shows all the VP's necessary to accommodate the base structures of the verbal compounds.

SYNTACTIC CATEGORIES

(307)

	+ "bare" object							without object	
	<i>dans</i> "dance"	<i>groeï</i> "grow"	<i>loop</i> "walk"	<i>skaats</i> "skate"	<i>slaap</i> "sleep"	<i>staan</i> "stand"	<i>werk</i> "work"	<i>pyn</i> "ache"	<i>rook</i> "smoke"
N	<i>wals-danser</i> <i>wals-dansende</i>		<i>rekord-loper</i> <i>ompad-loper</i>						
NP			<i>?slap=tou-loper</i> <i>stwe=vas-loper</i>						
ADJ	<i>kaal-danser</i> <i>?kaal-dansende</i>	<i>groot-gegroeide</i>	<i>kaal-loper</i> <i>?kaal-lopende</i>	<i>glad-geskaatste</i> <i>stukkend-geskaatste</i>	<i>dronk-geslaapte</i>		<i>moeg-gewerkte</i>		
ADV	<i>grasieus-dansende</i> <i>grasieus-gedansde</i>	<i>vinnig-groeiende</i>	<i>statig-lopende</i> <i>vinnig-lopende</i>		<i>?buite-slaper</i> <i>vas-slaper</i> <i>buite-slapende</i> <i>vas-slapende</i>	<i>snags-staner</i> <i>krom-staner</i> <i>snags-stanende</i> <i>krom-stanende</i>	<i>hard-werkende</i>		
PP	<i>(in=die=)rag=ad-</i> <i>danser</i> <i>(op=die=)tou-</i> <i>danser</i> <i>(in=die=)*rook=ad-</i> <i>dansende</i> <i>(op=die=)*tou-</i> <i>dansende</i>	<i>(met=)min=water-</i> <i>groeter</i> <i>(in=h=)kweekhuis-</i> <i>groeter</i> <i>(met=)*min=water-</i> <i>groeiende</i> <i>(in=h=)*kweek-</i> <i>huis-groeiende</i>	<i>(in=die=)*tuin-</i> <i>loper</i> <i>(op=die=)strand-</i> <i>loper</i>	<i>(in=die=)gang-</i> <i>skaatser</i> <i>(op=)ys-skaatser</i>	<i>(in=die=)?oggend-</i> <i>slaper</i> <i>(in=die=)wiegie-</i> <i>slaper</i> <i>(in=die=)*oggend-</i> <i>slapende</i> <i>(in=die=)*wiegie-</i> <i>slapende</i>	<i>(op=)*aandag-</i> <i>staner</i> <i>(op=)*aandag-</i> <i>stanende</i> <i>(op=die=)*berg-</i> <i>stanende</i>	<i>(in=die=)fabriek-</i> <i>werker</i> <i>(in=die=)*fabriek-</i> <i>werkende</i>	<i>(van=die=)*stamp-</i> <i>pynende</i>	<i>(in=die=)*reën-</i> <i>rokende</i>

GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS

(308)

		+ "bare" object						without object		
		<i>dans</i> "dance"	<i>groei</i> "grow"	<i>loop</i> "walk"	<i>skaats</i> "skate"	<i>slaap</i> "sleep"	<i>staan</i> "stand"	<i>werk</i> "work"	<i>pyn</i> "ache"	<i>rook</i> "smoke"
Subject										
Direct object										
Indirect object					(<i>vir=die=</i>) <i>plesier-skaatser</i>			(<i>vir=die=</i>)* <i>boer-werker</i> (<i>vir=die=</i>)* <i>rege-ring-werker</i>		
					(<i>vir=die=</i>)* <i>plesier-skaatsende</i>					
Non-term (PP)		(<i>*in=die=</i>) <i>nag-klub-danser</i> (<i>*in=n=</i>) <i>kabaret-danser</i>	(<i>?in=die=</i>) <i>skaduwee-groeier</i> <i>?in=die=</i>) <i>lente-groeier</i>	(<i>*op=die=</i>) <i>tou-loper</i> (<i>in=die=</i>)* <i>tuin-loper</i>	(<i>op=die=</i>) <i>dam-skaatser</i> (<i>?op=</i>) <i>ys-skaatser</i>	(<i>in=die=</i>) <i>wiegie-slaper</i> (<i>in=die=</i>) <i>?nag-slaper</i>	(<i>op=die=</i>)* <i>stoep-staner</i> (<i>op=</i>)* <i>aandag-staner</i>	(<i>?in=die=</i>) <i>fabriek-werker</i> (<i>?vir=die=</i>) <i>vakansie-werker</i>		
		(<i>?in=die=</i>)* <i>nag-klub-dansende</i> (<i>?in=n=</i>)* <i>kabaret-dansende</i>	(<i>in=die=</i>)* <i>skaduwee-groeiende</i> (<i>in=die=</i>)* <i>lente-groeiende</i>		(<i>op=die=</i>)* <i>dam-skaatsende</i> <i>?op=ys=</i>) <i>skaatsende</i>	(<i>in=die=</i>)* <i>wiegie-slapende</i> (<i>in=die=</i>)* <i>nag-slapende</i>	(<i>op=die=</i>)* <i>stoep-stanende</i> (<i>op=</i>)* <i>aandag-stanende</i>	(<i>in=die=</i>)* <i>fabriek-werkende</i> (<i>vir=die=</i>)* <i>vakansie-werkende</i>	(<i>van=die=</i>)* <i>stomp-pynende</i> (<i>in=die=</i>)* <i>litt-pynende</i>	<i>?in=die=</i>)* <i>winter-rokende</i>
"Bare" object		<i>wals-danser</i> <i>tango-danser</i>		<i>ompad-loper</i> <i>sonder-skoene-loper</i> <i>myl-loper</i>	<i>figuur-skaatser</i>					
		<i>wals-dansende</i> <i>tango-dansende</i>			<i>figuur-skaatsende</i>					

STRUCTURAL ADJACENCY

(309)

	+ "bare" object							without object	
	<i>dans</i> "dance"	<i>groei</i> "grow"	<i>loop</i> "walk"	<i>skaats</i> "skate"	<i>slaap</i> "sleep"	<i>staan</i> "stand"	<i>werk</i> "work"	<i>pyn</i> "ache"	<i>rook</i> "smoke"
<pre> VP / \ NP V N </pre>									
<pre> VP / \ NP V </pre>									
<pre> VP / \ NP V "Bare" object </pre>	<i>wals-danser</i> <i>wals-dansende</i>		<i>ompad-loper</i> <i>stywe-pas-loper</i>	<i>figuur-skaatser</i> <i>figuur-skaatsende</i>					
<pre> VP / \ PP V (non-term) </pre>	<i>(*op=die=)ou-danser</i> <i>(?op=die=)*ou-dansende</i>	<i>?(op=n=)berg-groeter</i> <i>(op=n=)*berg-groeiende</i>	<i>(*op=die=)tou-loper</i>	<i>(?op=)ys-skaatser</i> <i>?(op=)ys-skaatsende</i>	<i>(in=die=)wiegie-slaper</i> <i>(in=die=)*wiegie-slapende</i>	<i>(op=)*aandag-staner</i> <i>(op=)*aandag-stanende</i>	<i>(?in=die=)fabriek-werker</i> <i>(in=die=)*fabriek-werkende</i>	<i>(in=die=)*lit-pynende</i>	<i>?(in=die=)*winter-rokende</i>
<pre> VP / \ PP V (Indirect object) </pre>				<i>(vir=die=)plezier-skaatser</i> <i>(vir=die=)*plezier-skaatsende</i>			<i>(vir=die=)*boer-werker</i>		
<pre> VP / \ ADJ V </pre>	<i>kaal-danser</i> <i>?kaal-dansende</i>	<i>groot-gegroeide</i>	<i>kaal-loper</i> <i>?kaal-lopende</i>	<i>stukkend-ge-skaatste</i>	<i>dronk-geslaapte</i>		<i>moeg-gewerkte</i>		
<pre> VP / \ ADV V </pre>	<i>goed-gedansde</i>	<i>vinnig-groeiende</i>	<i>vinnig-lopende</i>		<i>?buite-slaper</i> <i>buite-slapende</i>	<i>regop-staner</i> <i>regop-stanende</i>	<i>hard-werkende</i>		

2.2.2 Generalizations

2.2.2.1 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING THE INCORPORATION OF SYNTACTIC CATEGORIES

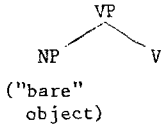
- a. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object in the case of *-er*, or any intransitive verb in the case of *-end*, and of which the peripheral constituent is a prepositional phrase.
- b. *-end* Suffixation productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object and of which the peripheral constituent is an adverb.
- c. *-er* Suffixation unproductively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object and of which the peripheral constituent is a noun, a noun phrase or an adverb.
- d. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object and of which the peripheral constituent is a noun or an adjective.
- e. *ge-* Prefixation fairly productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object and of which the peripheral constituent is an adjective.

2.2.2.2 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING THE INCORPORATION OF GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS

- a. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object in the case of *-er*, or any intransitive verb in the case of *-end*, and of which the peripheral constituent is a prepositional phrase.
- b. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation fairly productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object and of which the peripheral constituent is a "bare" object.
- c. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object and of which the peripheral constituent is an indirect object.

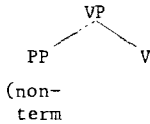
2.2.2.3 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING STRUCTURAL ADJACENCY

- a. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation fairly productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases in which the VP has the following structure:



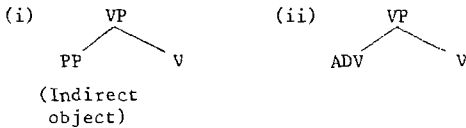
where V is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object.

- b. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases in which the VP has the following structure:



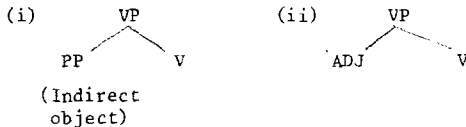
where V is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object, in the case of *-er*, or any intransitive verb in the case of *-end*.

- c. *-er* Suffixation unproductively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases in which the VP has either of the following structures:



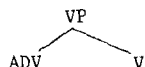
where V is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object.

- d. *-end* Suffixation unproductively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases in which the VP has the following structure:



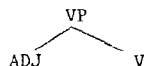
where V is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object.

- e. *-end* Suffixation fairly productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases in which the VP has the following structure:



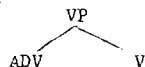
where V is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object.

- f. *ge-* Prefixation fairly proeuctively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases in which the VP has the following structure:



where V is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object.

- g. *ge-* Prefixation unproductively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases in which the VP has the following structure:



where V is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object.

2.2.2.4 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING THE INCORPORATION OF THEMATIC RELATIONS

- a. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object in the case of *-er*, and any intransitive verb in the case of *-end*, and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating location.
- b. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation fairly productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare object" in the case of *-er*, and any intransitive verb in the case of *-end*, and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating a goal or temporality.
- c. *-end* Suffixation fairly productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an intransitive verb and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating a source.

- d. *-er* and *-end* Suffixation fairly productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating accompaniment, a benefactive, an instrument, modality or the thematic relation x.
- e. *ge-* Prefixation unproductively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an intransitive verb which can take a "bare" object, and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating modality.

2.2.2.5 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING STRING ADJACENCY

It will appear from the analyses of the individual verbs in §2.2.3 below, that the constituents of the deep structure phrase which constitute the peripheral constituent of the synthetic compound must be adjacent to the verb in the deep structure phrase which will constitute the head of the synthetic compound.

2.2.3 Some verbs

2.2.3.1 Intransitive verbs + "bare" object

2.2.3.1.1 dans ("dance")

Simple derivations:

<i>dans</i>	<i>-ER</i>	
dance	-er	(= "dancer")
<i>dans</i>	<i>-END(e)</i>	
dance	-ing	(= "dancing")
<i>GE-</i>	<i>dans(d_e)</i>	
-ed	dance	(= "danced")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(311) *dat Jan graag h wals dans*
 that John gladly a waltz dances

-er : *wals - dans -ER*
 waltz dance -er

-end : *wals - dans -END(e)*
 waltz dance -ing

ge- : *wals - GE- dans(de)
waltz -ed dance
(= "waltz-danced")

(ii) Noun phrases

(312) dat die oom graag h stadige wals dans
that the man preferably a slow waltz dance

-er : *stadige = wals - dans -ER
slow waltz dance -er

-end : *stadige = wals - dans -END(e)
slow waltz dance -er

ge- : *stadige = wals - GE- dans(de)
slow waltz -ed dance
(= "slow waltz-danced")

(iii) Adjectives

(313) dat die meisie soms kaal dans
that the girl sometimes nude dance

-er : kaal - dans -ER
nude dance -er

-end : ?kaal - dans -END(e)
nude dance -ing

ge- : *kaal - GE- dans(de)
nude -ed dance
(= "nude-danced")

(iv) Adverbs

(314) dat die ballerina grasiëus dans
that the ballerina gracefully dances

-er : *grasiëus - dans -ER
gracefully dance -er

-end : grasiëus - dans -END(e)
gracefully dance -ing

ge- : grasiëus - GE- dans(de)
gracefully -ed dance
(= "gracefully-danced")

(315) *dat die paartjies verliefd dans*
 that the couples amorously dance

-er : *verliefd - dans -ER
 amorously dance -er

-end : *verliefd - dans -END(e)
 amorously dance -ing

ge- : *verliefd - GE- dans(de)
 amorously -ed dance
 (= "amorously-danced")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(316) *dat sy in die nagklub dans*
 that she in the nightclub dances

-er : (*in=die=)nagklub - dans -ER
 (in the) nightclub dance -er

-end : (?in=die=)*nagklub - dans -END(e)
 (in the) nightclub dance -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)nagklub - GE- dans(de)
 (in the) nightclub -ed dance
 (= "(in the) nightclub-danced")

(317) *dat die akrobaat op die tou dans*
 that the acrobat on the rope dances

-er : (*op=die=tou) - dans -ER
 (on the) rope dance -er

-end : (?op=die=)*tou - dans -END(e)
 (on the) rope dance -ing

ge- : *(op=die=tou) - GE- dans(de)
 (on the) rope -ed dance
 (= "(on the) rope-danced")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(318) *dat die tieners dans*
 that the teenagers dance

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>tiener(s)</i> - <i>dans</i> -ER teenager(s) dance -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>tiener(s)</i> - <i>dans</i> -END(e) teenager(s) dance -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>tiener(s)</i> - GE- <i>dans(de)</i> teenager(s) -ed dance (= "teenager(s)-danced")

(ii) Direct object

dans ("dance") is an intransitive verb and therefore does not take a direct object.

(319) **dat die paartjies die mat dans*
that the couples the carpet dance

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>mat</i> - <i>dans</i> -ER carpet dance -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>mat</i> - <i>dans</i> -END(e) carpet dance -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>mat</i> - GE- <i>dans(de)</i> carpet -ed dance (= "carpet-danced")

(iii) Indirect object

(320) *dat die dogtertjie vir haar ouma dans*
that the little girl for her grandmother dance

<u>-er</u>	:	*(<i>vir=haar=</i>) <i>ouma</i> - <i>dans</i> -ER (for her) grandmother dance -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(<i>vir=haar=</i>) <i>ouma</i> - <i>dans</i> -END(e) (for her) grandmother dance -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(<i>vir=haar=</i>) <i>ouma</i> - GE- <i>dans(de)</i> (for her) grandmother -ed dance (= "(for her) grandmother-danced")

(321) *dat die aap vir sy baas dans*
that the monkey for his master dance

<u>-er</u>	:	*(<i>vir=sy=</i>) <i>baas</i> - <i>dans</i> -ER (for his) master dance -er
------------	---	---

-end : *(vir=sy=)baas - dans -END(e)
(for his) master dance -ing

ge- : *(vir=sy=)baas - GE- dans(de)
(for his) master -ed dance
(= "(for his) master-danced")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(322) *dat die meisie in die nagklub dans*
that the girl in the nightclub dances

-er : (*in=die=)nagklub - dans -ER
(in the) nightclub dance -er

-end : (?in=die=)*nagklub - dans -END(e)
(in the) nightclub dance -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)nagklub - GE- dans(de)
(in the) nightclub -ed dance
(= "(in the) nightclub-danced")

(323) *dat die meisie in 'n kabaret dans*
that the girl in a cabaret dances

-er : (*in='n=)kabaret - dans -ER
(in a) cabaret dance -er

-end : (?in='n=)*kabaret - dans -END(e)
(in a) cabaret dance -ing

ge- : *(in='n=)kabaret - GE- dans(de)
(in a) cabaret -ed dance
(= "(in a) cabaret-danced")

(324) *dat sy met haar man dans*
that she with her husband dances

-er : *(met=haar=)man - dans -ER
(with her) husband dance -er

-end : *(met=haar=)man - dans -END(e)
(with her) husband dance -ing

ge- : *(met=haar=)man - GE- dans(de)
(with her) husband -ed dance
(= "(with her) husband-danced")

(v) "Bare" object

(325) *dat die oom graag h wals dans*
 that the man gladly a waltz dances

-er : *wals - dans -ER*
 waltz dance -er

-end : *wals - dans -END(e)*
 waltz dance -ing

ge- : **wals - GE- dans(de)*
 waltz -ed dance
 (= "waltz-danced")

(326) *dat Marie die tango dans*
 that Marie the tango dances

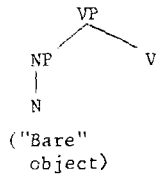
-er : *tango - dans -ER*
 tango dance -er

-end : *tango - dans -END(e)*
 tango dance -ing

ge- : **tango - GE- dans(de)*
 tango -ed dance
 (= "tango-danced")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



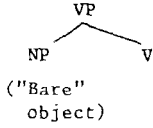
(327) *dat hy graag h wals dans*
 that he gladly a waltz dance

-er : *wals - dans -ER*
 waltz dance -er

-end : *wals - dans -END(e)*
 waltz dance -ing

ge- : **wals - GE- dans(de)*
 waltz -ed dance
 (= "waltz-danced")

(ii)



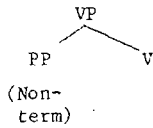
(328) *dat die oom n stadige wals dans*
 that the man a slow waltz dances

-er : *stadige=wals- dans -ER
 slow waltz dance -er

-end : *stadige=wals - dans -END(e)
 slow waltz dance -ing

ge- : *stadige=wals - GE- dans(de)
 slow waltz -ed dance
 (= "slow waltz-danced")

(iii)



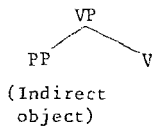
(329) *dat die akrobaat op die tou dans*
 that the acrobat on the rope dances

-er : (*op=die-)tou - dans -ER
 (on the) rope dance -er

-end : (?op=die-)*tou - dans -END(e)
 (on the) rope dance -ing

ge- : *(op=die-)tou - GE- dans(de)
 (on the) rope -ed dance
 (= "(on the) rope-danced")

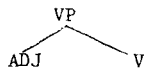
(iv)



(330) *dat die dogtertjie vir haar oma dans*
 that the little girl for her grandmother dances

- er : *(vir=haar=)ouma - dans -ER
(for her) grandmother dance -er
- end : *(vir=haar=)ouma - dans -END(e)
(for her) grandmother dance -ing
- ge- : *(vir=haar=)ouma - GE- dans(de)
(for her) grandmother -ed dance
(= "(for her) grandmother-danced")

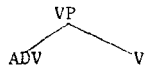
(v)



- (331) *dat die paartjies kaal dans*
that the couples nude dance

- er : kaal - dans -ER
nude dance -er
- end : ?kaal - dans -END(e)
nude dance -ing
- ge- : *kaal - GE- dans(de)
nude -ed dance
(= "nude-danced")

(vi)



- (332) *dat hulle goed dans*
that they well dance

- er : *goed - dans -ER
well dance -er
- end : *goed - dans -END(e)
well dance -ing
- ge- : goed - GE- dans(de)
well -ed dance
(= "well-danced")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

- (333) *dat die oom n wals met sy vrou dans*
that the man a waltz with his wife dances

- er : (?met=sy=)*vrou - dans -ER
(with his) wife dance -er
- end : (?met=sy=)*vrou - dans -END(e)
(with his) wife dance -ing
- ge- : *(met=sy=)vrou - GE- dans(de)
(with his) wife -ed dance
(= "(with his) wife-danced")

(ii) Agent

- (334) *dat die aap dans om geld te verdien vir*
that the monkey dances to money earn for
- sy baas*
his master

- er : *aap - dans -ER
monkey dance -er
- end : *aap - dans -END(e)
monkey dance -ing
- ge- : *aap - GE- dans(de)
monkey -ed dance
(= "monkey-danced")

(iii) Benefactive

- (335) *dat die aapie vir die bedelaar dans*
that the monkey for the beggar dances

- er : *(vir=die=)bedelaar - dans -ER
(for the) beggar dance -er
- end : *(vir=die=)bedelaar - dans -END(e)
(for the) beggar dance -ing
- ge- : *(vir=die=)bedelaar - GE- dans(de)
(for the) beggar -ed dance
(= "(for the) beggar-danced")

(iv) Duration

- (336) *dat hulle die hele aand lank dans*
that they the whole evening long dance

<u>-er</u>	:	*die=hele =aand = lank - dans -ER the whole evening long dance -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*die=hele =aand = lank - dans -END(e) the whole evening long dance -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*die=hele =aand = lank - GE- dans(de) the whole evening long -ed dance (= "the whole evening long-danced")

(v) Goal

(337) dat die apie vir geld dans
that the monkey for money dances

<u>-er</u>	:	*(vir=)geld - dans -ER (for) money dance -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(vir=)geld - dans -END(e) (for) money dance -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(vir=)geld - GE- dans(de) (for) money -ed dance (= "(for) money-danced")

(vi) Instrument

(338) dat h mens met jou voete dans
that one with one's feet dances

<u>-er</u>	:	*(met=)jou=voete - dans -ER (with)one's feet dance -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(met=)jou=voete - dans -END(e) (with)one's feet dance -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(met=)jou=voete - GE- dans(de) (with)one's feet -ed dance (= "(with) one's feet-danced")

(vii) Location

(339) dat die akrobaat op die tou dans
that the acrobat on the rope dances

<u>-er</u>	:	(*op=die=)tou - dans -ER (on the) rope dance -er
------------	---	---

-end : (?op=die=)**rou - dans* -END(e)
 (on the) rope dance -ing

ge- : *(op=die=)*rou - GE- dans(de)*
 (on the) rope -ed dance
 (= "(on the) rope-danced")

(viii) Modality

(340) *dat die ballerina grasiuus dans*
 that the ballerina gracefully dances

-er : **grasiuus - dans* -ER
 gracefully dance -er

-end : *grasiuus - dans* -END(e)
 gracefully dance -ing

ge- : *grasiuus - GE- dans(de)*
 gracefully -ed dance
 (= "gracefully-danced")

(ix) Patient

(*dans* is an intransitive verb and therefore can have no direct object.)

(341) **dat die paartjies die saal dans*
 that the couples the hall dance

-er : **saal - dans* -ER
 hall dance -er

-end : **saal - dans* -END(e)
 hall dance -ing

ge- : **saal - GE- dans(de)*
 hall -ed dance
 (= "hall-danced")

(x) Source

(342) *dat die mense van vreugde dans*
 that the people with joy dance

-er : *(van=)*vreugde - dans* -ER
 (with) joy dance -er

-end : ?(van=)*vreugde - dans -END(e)
 (with) joy dance -ing

ge- : *(van=)vreugde - GE- dans(de)
 (with) joy -ed dance
 (= "(with) joy-danced")

(xi) Temporality

(343) *dat die mense gewoonlik in die aand dans*
 that the people usually in the evening dance

-er : *(in=die=)aand - dans -ER
 (in the) evening dance -er

-end : (in=die=)*aand - dans -END(e)
 (in the) evening dance -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)aand - GE- dans(de)
 (in the) evening -ed dance
 (= "(in the) evening-danced")

(xii) Thematic relation x

(344) *dat Marie die tango dans*
 that Marie the tango dance

-er : tango - dans -ER
 tango - dance -er

-end : tango - dans -END(e)
 tango - dance -ing

ge- : *tango - GE- dans(de)
 tango -ed dance
 (= "tango-danced")

(xiii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(345) *dat die poppie dans*
 that the doll dances

-er : *poppie - dans -ER
 doll dance -er

-end : *poppie - dans -END(e)
 doll dance -ing

ge- : *poppie - GE- dans(de)
doll -ed dance
(= "doll-danced")

(xiv) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(dans is an intransitive verb and therefore does not take a direct object.)

(346) *dat die vrou die man dans
that the woman the man dances

-er : *man - dans -ER
man dance -er

-end : *man - dans -END(e)
man dance -ing

ge- : *man - GE- dans(de)
man -ed dance
(= "man-danced")

2.2.3.1.2 groei ("grow")

Simple derivations: groei -ER
grow -er (= "grower")
groei -END(e)
grow -ing (= "growing")
GE- groei(de)
-ed grow (= "grewed")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(347) dat die seun groei
that the boy grows

-er : *seun - groei -ER
boy grow -er

-end : *seun - groei -END(e)
boy grow -ing

ge- : *seun - GE- groei(de)
 boy -ed grow
 (= "boy-growed")

(348) *dat die onderneming groei*
 that the enterprise grows

-er : *onderneming - groei -ER
 enterprise grow -er

-end : *onderneming - groei -END(e)
 enterprise grow -ing

ge- : *onderneming - GE- groei(de)
 enterprise -ed grow
 (= "enterprise-growed")

(ii) Noun phrases

(349) *dat die groot seun groei*
 that the big boy grows

-er : *groot=seun - groei -ER
 big boy grow -er

-end : *groot=seun - groei -END(de)
 big boy grow -ing

ge- : *groot=seun - GE- groei(de)
 big boy -ed grow
 (= "big boy-growed")

(iii) Adjectives

(350) *dat die kind jonk groei*
 that the child young grows
 (= "that the child grows while still young")

-er : *jonk - groei -ER
 young grow -er

-end : *jonk - groei -END(e)
 young grow -ing

ge- : *jonk - GE- groei(de)
 young -ed grow
 (= "young-growed")

(351) *dat die boom groot groei*
 that the tree big grows

-er : *groot - groei -ER
 big grow -er

-end : *groot - groei -END(e)
 big grow -ing

ge- : groot - GE- groei(de)
 big -ed grow
 (= "big-growed")

(iv) Adverbs

(352) *dat die onderneming vinnig groei*
 that the enterprise fast grows

-er : *vinnig - groei -ER
 fast grow -er

-end : vinnig - groei -END(e)
 fast grow -ing

ge- : *vinnig - GE- groei(de)
 fast -ed grow
 (= "fast-growed")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(353) *dat die boom met min water groei*
 that the tree with little water grows

-er : (met=)min = water - groei -ER
 (with) little water grow -er

-end : (met=)*min = water - groei -END(e)
 (with) little water grow -ing

ge- : *(met=)min = water - GE- groei(de)
 (with) little water -ed grow
 (= "(with) little water-growed")

(354) *dat orgidee in 'n kweekhuis groei*
 that orchids in a hothouse grow

-er : (?in=h)kweekhuis - groei -ER
 (in a) hothouse grow -er

-end : (?in=h=) *kweekhuis - groei -END(e)
 (in a) hothouse grow -ing

ge- : *(in=h=)kweekhuis - GE- groei(de)
 (in a) hothouse -ed grow
 (= "(in a) hothouse-grown")

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

(355) *dat die plant groei*
 that the plant grows

-er : *plant - groei -ER
 plant grow -er

-end : *plant - groei -END(e)
 plant grow -ing

ge- : *plant - GE- groei(de)
 plant -ed grow
 (= "plant-grown")

(ii) Direct objects

(groei is an intransitive verb and therefore does not take a direct object.)

(356) **dat die kind die jaar groei*
 that the child the year grows

-er : *jaar - groei -ER
 year grow -er

-end : *jaar - groei -END(e)
 year grow -ing

ge- : *jaar - GE- groei(de)
 year -ed grow
 (= "year-grown")

(iii) Indirect object

(357) ?*dat die seun vir sy pa groei*
 that the boy for his father grows

<u>-er</u>	:	*(<i>vir=sy=</i>) <i>pa</i>	-	<i>groeï</i>	-ER
		(for his) father	grow	-er	
<u>-end</u>	:	*(<i>vir=sy=</i>) <i>pa</i>	-	<i>groeï</i>	-END(e)
		(for his) father	grow	-ing	
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(<i>vir=sy=</i>) <i>pa</i>	-	GE- <i>groeï</i> (de)	
		(for his) father	-ed	grow	
		(= "(for his) father-grewed")			

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(358) *dat sampioene in die skaduwee groeï*
that mushrooms in the shade grow

<u>-er</u>	:	(? <i>in=die=</i>) <i>skaduwee</i>	-	<i>groeï</i>	-ER
		(in the) shade	grow	-er	
<u>-end</u>	:	(<i>in=die=</i>)* <i>skaduwee</i>	-	<i>groeï</i>	-END(e)
		(in the) shade	grow	-ing	
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(<i>in=die=</i>) <i>skaduwee</i>	-	GE- <i>groeï</i> (de)	
		(in the) shade	-ed	grow	
		(= "(in the) shade-grewed")			

(359) *dat die plante in die lente groeï*
that the plants in the spring grow

<u>-er</u>	:	(? <i>in=die=</i>) <i>lente</i>	-	<i>groeï</i>	-ER
		(in the) spring	grow	-er	
<u>-end</u>	:	(<i>in=die=</i>)* <i>lente</i>	-	<i>groeï</i>	-END(e)
		(in the) spring	grow	-ing	
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(<i>in=die=</i>) <i>lente</i>	-	GE- <i>groeï</i> (de)	
		(in the) spring	-ed	grow	
		(= "(in the) spring-grewed")			

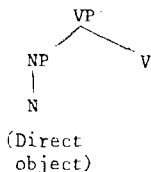
(v) "Bare" object

(360) *dat die plant elke maand 'n sentimeter groeï*
that the plant every month a centimetre grows

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>sentimeter</i>	-	<i>groeï</i>	-ER
		centimetre	grow	-er	
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>sentimeter</i>	-	<i>groeï</i>	-END(e)
		centimetre	grow	-ing	
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>sentimeter</i>	-	GE- <i>groeï</i> (de)	
		centimetre	-ed	grow	
		(= "centimetre-grewed")			

c. Structural Adjacency

(i)

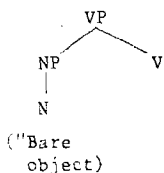


(361) *dat die onderneming 'n jaar groei*
 that the enterprise a year grows

-er : *jaar - groei -ER
 year grow -er

-end : *jaar - groei -END(e)
 year grow -ing

ge- : *jaar - GE- groei(de)
 year -ed grow
 (= "year-growed")



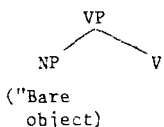
(362) *dat die kind 'n sentimeter groei*
 that the child a centimetre grows

-er : *sentimeter - groei -ER
 centimetre grow -er

-end : *sentimeter - groei -END(e)
 centimetre grow -ing

ge- : *sentimeter - GE- groei(de)
 centimetre -ed grow
 (= "centimetre-growed")

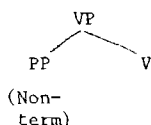
(ii)



(363) *dat die boom 'n paar sentimeter groei*
 that the tree a few centimetres grow

- er : *paar=sentimeter - groei -ER
 few centimetres grow -er
- end : *paar=sentimeter - groei -END(e)
 few centimetres grow -ing
- ge- : *paar=sentimeter - GE- groei(de)
 few centimetres -ed grow
 (= "few centimetres-growed")

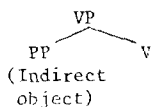
(iii)



(364) *dat dennebome goed op 'n berg groei*
 that pine trees well on a mountain grow

- er : ?(op='n)berg - groei -ER
 (on a) mountain grow -er
- end : (op='n)*berg - groei -END(e)
 (on a) mountain grow -ing
- ge- : *(op='n)berg - GE- groei(de)
 (on a) mountain -ed grow
 (= "(on a) mountain-growed")

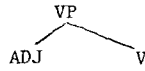
(iv)



(365) *?dat die seun vir sy pa groei*
 that the boy for his father grows

- er : *(vir=sy)pa - groei -ER
 (for his) father grow -er
- end : *(vir=sy)pa - groei -END(e)
 (for his) father grow -ing
- ge- : *(vir=sy)pa - GE- groei(de)
 (for his) father -ed grow
 (= "(for his) father-growed")

(v)



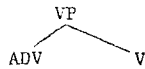
(366) *dat die boom groot groei*
 that the tree big grows

-er : *groot - groei -ER
 big grow -er

-end : *groot - groei -END(e)
 big grow -ing

ge- : groot - GE- groei(de)
 big -ed grow
 (= "big-growed")

(vi)



(367) *dat die plant vinnig groei*
 that the plant fast grows

-er : *vinnig - groei -ER
 fast grow -er

-end : vinnig - groei -END(e)
 fast grow -ing

ge- : *vinnig - GE- groei(de)
 fast -ed grow
 (= "fast-growed")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(368) *dat die blomme saam met die onkruid groei*
 that the flowers along with the weeds grow

-er : *saam =met =die=onkruid - groei -ER
 along with the weeds grow -er

-end : *saam =met =die=onkruid - groei -END(e)
 along with the weeds grow -ing

ge- : *saam =met =die=onkruid - GE- groei(de)
 along with the weeds -ed grow
 (= "along with the weeds-growed")

(ii) Agent

(369) *dat die boom groei om meer lig te kry*
 that the tree grows to more light get

-er : *boom - groei -ER
 tree grow -er

-end : *boom - groei -END(e)
 tree grow -ing

ge- : *boom - GE- groei(de)
 tree -ed grow
 (= "tree-growed")

(iii) Benefactive

(370) *dat die seun vir sy pa groei*
 that the boy for his father grows

-er : *(vir=sy)pa - groei -ER
 (for his) father grow -er

-end : *(vir=sy)pa - groei -END(e)
 (for his) father grow -ing

ge- : *(vir=sy)pa - GE- groei(de)
 (for his) father -ed grow
 (= "(for his) father-growed")

(iv) Duration

(371) *dat die boom vir twintig jaar groei*
 that the tree for twenty years grows

-er : *vir=twintig=jaar - groei -ER
 for twenty years grow -er

-end : *vir=twintig=jaar - groei -END(e)
 for twenty years grow -ing

ge- : *vir=twintig=jaar - GE- groei(de)
 for twenty years -ed grow
 (= "for twenty years-growed")

(v) Goal

(372) *dat die plant na die lig toe groei*
 that the plant to the light grows

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>(na=die=)lig - groei</i> -ER (to the) light grow -er
<u>-end</u>	:	<i>(na=die=)*lig - groei</i> -END(e) (to the) light grow -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>(na=die=)lig - GE- groei(de)</i> (to the) light -ed grow (= "(to the) light-growed")

(vi) Instrument

(373) *dat die gewas net met kunsmis groei*
that the plant only with fertilizer grows

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>(met =)kunsmis - groei</i> -ER (with) fertilizer grow -er
<u>-end</u>	:	<i>(met =)*kunsmis - groei</i> -END(e) (with) fertilizer grow -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>(met =)kunsmis - GE- groei(de)</i> (with) fertilizer -ed grow (= "(with) fertilizer-growed")

(vii) Location

(374) *dat die lilies in die water groei*
that the lilies in the water grow

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>(in=die=)water - groei</i> -ER (in the) water grow -er
<u>-end</u>	:	<i>(in=die=)*water - groei</i> -END(e) (in the) water grow -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>(in=die)water - GE- groei(de)</i> (in the) water -ed grow (= "(in the) water-growed")

(viii) Modality

(375) *dat die plant vinnig groei*
that the plant fast grows

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>vinnig - groei</i> -ER fast grow -er
------------	---	--

-end : *vinnig - groei -END(e)*
 fast grow -ing

ge- : **vinnig - GE- groei(de)*
 fast -ed grow
 (= "fast-growed")

(ix) Patient

(groei is an intransitive verb.)

(376) **dat die plant die pot groei*
 that the plant the pot grows-er : **pot - groei -ER*
 pot grow -er-end : **pot - groei -END(e)*
 pot grow -ingge- : **pot - GE- groei(de)*
 pot -ed grow
 (= "pot-growed")(x) Source(377) *dat die plant van 'n steggie groei*
 that the plant from a cutting grows-er : **(van=h=)steggie - groei -ER*
 (from a) cutting grow -er-end : *(van=h=)*steggie - groei -END(e)*
 (from a) cutting grow -ingge- : **(van=h=)steggie - GE- groei(de)*
 (from a) cutting -ed grow
 (= "(from a) cutting-growed")(xi) Temporality(378) *dat die plant in die lente groei*
 that the plant in the spring grows-er : **(in=die=lente) - groei -ER*
 (in the) spring grow -er

-end : (in=die=)*lente - groei -END(e)
 (in the) spring grow -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)lente - GE- groei(de)
 (in the) spring -ed grow
 (= "(in the) spring-growed")

(xii) Thematic relation x

(379) *dat die boom h sentimeter groei*
 that the tree a centimetre grows

-er : *sentimeter - groei -ER
 centimetre grow -er

-end : *sentimeter - groei -END(e)
 centimetre grow -ing

ge- : *sentimeter - GE- groei(de)
 centimetre -ed grow
 (= "centimetre-growed")

(xiii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(380) *dat die onderneming groei*
 that the enterprise grows

-er : *onderneming - groei -ER
 enterprise grow -er

-end : *onderneming - groei -END(e)
 enterprise grow -ing

ge- : *onderneming - GE- groei(de)
 enterprise -ed grow
 (= "enterprise-growed")

(xiv) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(groei is an intransitive verb.)

(381) **dat die seun h hemp groei*
 that the boy a shirt grows

-er : *hemp - groei -ER
 shirt grow -er

-end : *hemp - groei -END(e)
shirt grow -ing

ge- : *hemp - GE- groei(de)
shirt -ed grow
(= "shirt-grewed")

2.2.3.1.3 loop ("walk")

Simple derivations: *loop* -ER
walk -er (= "walker")
loop -END(e)
walk -ing (= "walking")
GE- *loop*(te)
-ed walk (= "walked")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(382) *dat Jan n rekord loop by die atletiekbyeenkoms*
that John a record walks at the athletics meeting

-er : *rekord* - *loop* -ER
record walk -er

-end : **rekord* - *loop* -END(e)
record walk -ing

ge- : **rekord* - GE- *loop*(te)
record -ed walk
(= "record-walked")

(383) *dat Jan gewoonlik die ompad loop*
that John usually the roundabout way walks

-er : *ompad* - *loop* -ER
roundabout way walk -er

-end : **ompad* - *loop* -END(e)
roundabout way walk -ing

ge- : **ompad* - GE- *loop*(te)
roundabout way -ed walk
(= "roundabout way-walked")

(ii) Noun phrases

(384) *dat die akrobaat op die slap tou loop*
 that the acrobat on the slack rope walks

-er : ?*slap=tou* - *loop* -ER
 slack rope walk -er

-end : **slap=tou* - *loop* -END(e)
 slack rope walk -ing

ge- : **slap=tou* - GE- *loop(te)*
 slack rope -ed walk
 (= "slack rope-walked")

(385) *dat Jan 'n stywe pas loop*
 that John a quick pace walks

-er : *stywe=pas* - *loop* -ER
 quick pace walk -er

-end : **stywe=pas* - *loop* -END(e)
 quick pace walk -ing

ge- : **stywe=pas* - GE- *loop(te)*
 quick pace -ed walk
 (= "quick pace-walked")

(iii) Adjectives

(386) *dat die mannekyn kaal loop*
 that the mannequin nude walks

-er : *kaal* - *loop* -ER
 nude walk -er

-end : ?*kaal* - *loop* -END(e)
 nude walk -ing

ge- : **kaal* - GE- *loop(te)*
 nude -ed walk
 (= "nude-walked")

(iv) Adverbs

(387) *dat die ou dame statig loop*
 that the old woman stately walks

-er : *statiġ - loop -ER
stately walk -er

-end : statiġ - loop -END(e)
stately walk -ing

ge- : *statiġ - GE- loop(te)
stately -ed walk
(= "stately-walked")

(388) *dat Jan vinnig loop*
that John fast walks

-er : *vinnig - loop -ER
fast walk -er

-end : vinnig - loop -END(e)
fast walk -ing

ge- : *vinnig - GE- loop(te)
fast -ed walk
(= "fast-walked")

(389) *dat die meisie nou loop*
that the girl now walks

-er : *nou - loop -ER
now walk -er

-end : *nou - loop -END(e)
now walk -ing

ge- : *nou - GE- loop(te)
now -ed walk
(= "now-walked")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(390) *dat die oom dikwels in die tuin loop*
that the man often in the garden walks

-er : (in=die=)*tuin - loop -ER
(in the) garden walk -er

-end : *(in=die=)tuin - loop -END(e)
(in the) garden walk -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)tuin - GE- loop(te)
(in the) garden -ed walk
(= "(in the) garden-walked")

- (391) *dat die voël op die strand loop*
 that the bird on the beach walks
- er : (?op=die=)strand - loop -ER
 (on the) beach walk -er
- end : *(op=die=)strand - loop -END(e)
 (on the) beach walk -ing
- ge- : *(op=die=)strand - GE- loop(te)
 (on the) beach -ed walk
 (= "(on the) beach-walked")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

- (392) *dat die akrobaat loop*
 that the acrobat walks
- er : *akrobaat - loop -ER
 acrobat walk -er
- end : *akrobaat - loop -END(e)
 acrobat walk -ing
- ge- : *akrobaat - GE- loop(te)
 acrobat -ed walk
 (= "acrobat-walked")

(ii) Direct object

loop is an intransitive verb and therefore cannot take a direct object.

- (393) **dat die meisie die verhoog loop*
 that the girl the stage walks
- er : *verhoog - loop -ER
 stage walk -er
- end : *verhoog - loop -END(e)
 stage walk -ing
- ge- : *verhoog - GE- loop(te)
 stage -ed walk
 (= "stage-walked")

(iii) Indirect object

(394) *dat die seun vir sy ma (winkel toe) loop*
 that the boy for his mother (shop to) walks

-er : *(vir=sy=)ma - loop -ER
 (for his) mother walk -er

-end : *(vir=sy =)ma - loop -END(e)
 (for his) mother walk -ing

ge- : *(vir=sy =)ma - GE- loop(te)
 (for his) mother -ed walk
 (= "(for his) mother-walked")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(395) *dat die akrobaat op die tou loop*
 that the acrobat on the rope walks

-er : *(op=die=)tou - loop -ER
 (on the) rope walk -er

-end : *(op=die=)tou - loop -END(e)
 (on the) rope walk -ing

ge- : *(op=die=)tou - GE- loop(te)
 (on the) rope -ed walk
 (= "(on the) rope-walked")

(396) *dat die meisie dikwels in die tuin loop*
 that the girl often in the garden walks

-er : (in=die=)*tuin - loop -ER
 (in the) garden walk -er

-end : *(in=die=)tuin - loop -END(e)
 (in the) garden walk -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)tuin - GE- loop(te)
 (in the) garden -ed walk
 (= "(in the) garden-walked")

(v) "Bare" object

(397) *dat Jan gewoonlik die ompad loop*
 that John usually the roundabout way walks

-er : *ompad* - *loop* -ER
 roundabout way walk -er

-end : **ompad* - *loop* -END(e)
 roundabout way walk -ing

ge- : **ompad* - GE- *loop*(te)
 roundabout way -ed walk
 (= "roundabout way-walked")

(398) *dat die seun sonder skoene loop*
 that the boy without shoes walks

-er : *sonder = skoene* - *loop* -ER
 without shoes walk -er

-end : **sonder = skoene* - *loop* -END(e)
 without shoes walk -ing

ge- : **sonder = skoene* - GE- *loop*(te)
 without shoes -ed walk
 (= "without shoes-walked")

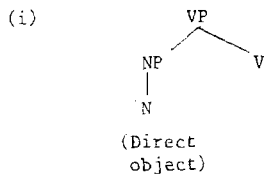
(399) *dat die atleet die myl loop*
 that the athlete the mile walks

-er : *myl* - *loop* -ER
 mile walk -er

-end : **myl* - *loop* -END(e)
 mile walk -ing

ge- : **myl* - GE- *loop*(te)
 mile -ed walk
 (= "mile-walked")

c. Structural Adjacency

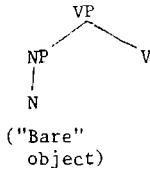


(400) **dat die meisie die verhoog loop*
 that the girl the stage walks

-er : *verhoog - loop -ER
stage walk -er

-end : *verhoog - loop -END(e)
stage walk -ing

ge- : *verhoog - GE- loop(te)
stage -ed walk
(= "stage-walked")



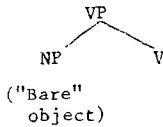
(401) dat Jan h ompad loop
that Jan a roundabout way walks

-er : ompad - loop -ER
roundabout way walk -er

-end : *ompad - loop -END(e)
roundabout way walk -ing

ge- : *ompad - GE- loop(te)
roundabout way -ed walk
(= "roundabout way-walked")

(ii)

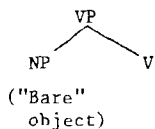


(402) *dat die meisie die groot verhoog loop
that the girl the big stage walks

-er : *groot=verhoog - loop -ER
big stage walk -er

-end : *groot=verhoog - loop -END(e)
big stage walk -ing

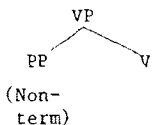
ge- : *groot=verhoog - GE- loop(te)
big stage -ed walk
(= "big stage-walked")



(403) *dat Jan h stywe pas loop*
 that Jan a quick pace walks

- er : *stywe=pas - loop -ER*
 quick pace walk -er
- end : **stywe=pas - loop -END(e)*
 quick pace walk -ing
- ge- : **stywe=pas - GE- loop(te)*
 quick pace -ed walk
 (= "quick pace-walked")

(iii)

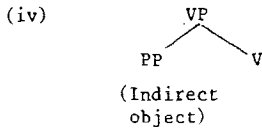


(404) *dat die akrobaat op die tou loop*
 that the acrobat on the rope walks

- er : *(*op=die=tou - loop -ER*
 (on the) rope walk -er
- end : **op=die=tou - loop -END(e)*
 (on the) rope walk -ing
- ge- : **op=die=tou - GE- loop(te)*
 (on the) rope -ed walk
 (= "(on the) rope-walked")

(405) *dat die oom dikwels in die tuin loop*
 that the man often in the garden walks

- er : *(in=die=)*tuin - loop -ER*
 (in the) garden walk -er
- end : **in=die=tuin - loop -END(e)*
 (in the) garden walk -ing
- ge- : **in=die=tuin - GE- loop(te)*
 (in the) garden -ed walk
 (= "(in the) garden-walked")

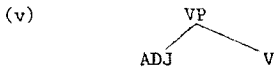


(406) *dat die seun vir sy ma loop*
 that the boy for his mother walks

-er : *(vir= sy=)ma - loop -ER
 (for his) mother walk -er

-end : *(vir= sy=)ma - loop -END(e)
 (for his) mother walk -ing

ge- : *(vir= sy=)ma - GE- loop(te)
 (for his) mother -ed walk
 (= "(for his) mother-walked")

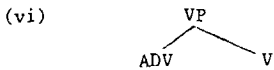


(407) *dat die mannekyn kaal loop*
 that the mannequin nude walks

-er : kaal - loop -ER
 nude walk -er

-end : ?kaal - loop -END(e)
 nude walk -ing

ge- : *kaal - GE- loop(te)
 nude -ed walk
 (= "nude-walked")



(408) *dat Jan vinnig loop*
 that Jan fast walks

-er : *vinnig - loop -ER
 fast walk -er

-end : vinnig - loop -END(e)
 fast walk -ing

ge- : *vinnig - GE- loop(te)
 fast -ed walk
 (= "fast-walked")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(409) dat die hond saam met sy baas loop
 that the dog along with his master walks

-er : *saam =met =sy =baas - loop -ER
 along with his master walk -er

-end : *saam =met =sy= baas - loop -END(e)
 along with his master walk -ing

ge- : *saam =met =sy =baas - GE- loop(te)
 along with his master -ed walk
 (= "along with his master-walked")

(ii) Agent

(410) dat die tannie loop om petrol te spaar
 that the woman walks to petrol save

-er : *tannie - loop -ER
 woman walk -er

-end : *tannie - loop -END(e)
 woman walk -ing

ge- : *tannie - GE- loop(te)
 woman -ed walk
 (= "woman-walked")

(iii) Benefactive

(411) dat die seun vir sy ma loop
 that the boy for his mother walks

-er : *(vir=sy =)ma - loop -ER
 (for his) mother walk -er

-end : *(vir=sy =)ma - loop -END(e)
 (for his) mother walk -ing

ge- : *(vir=sy =)ma - GE- loop(te)
 (for his) mother -ed walk
 (= "(for his) mother-walked")

(iv) Duration

(412) *dat die hond vir agt uur loop*
 that the dog for eight hours walks

-er : *vir=agt = uur - loop -ER
 for eight hours walk -er

-end : *vir=agt = uur - loop -END(e)
 for eight hours walk -ing

ge- : *vir=agt = uur - GE- loop(te)
 for eight hours -ed walk
 (= "for eight hours-walked")

(v) Goal

(413) *dat die kind na die skool loop*
 that the child to the school walks

-er : *(na=die=)skool - loop -ER
 (to the) school walk -er

-end : *(na=die=)skool - loop -END(e)
 (to the) school walk -ing

ge- : *(na=die=)skool - GE- loop(te)
 (to the) school -ed walk
 (= "(to the) school-walked")

(vi) Instrument

(414) *dat 'n mens met jou bene loop*
 that one with one's legs walks

-er : *(met =jou =)bene - loop -ER
 (with one's) legs walk -er

-end : *(met =jou =)bene - loop -END(e)
 (with one's) legs walk -ing

ge- : *(met =jou =)bene - GE- loop(te)
 (with one's) legs -ed walk
 (= "(with one's) legs-walked")

(vii) Location

(415) *dat die mannekyn in die modeparade loop*
 that the mannequin in the fashion show walks

-er : *(in=die=)modeparade - loop -ER*
 (in the) fashion show walk -er

-end : **(in=die=)modeparade - loop -END(e)*
 (in the) fashion show walk -ing

ge- : **(in=die=)modeparade - GE- loop(te)*
 (in the) fashion show -ed walk
 (= "(in the) fashion show-walked")

(viii) Modality

(416) *dat die oom stadig loop*
 that the man slowly walks

-er : **stadirg - loop -ER*
 slowly walk -er

-end : *stadirg - loop -END(e)*
 slowly walk -ing

ge- : **stadirg - GE- loop(te)*
 slowly -ed walk
 (= "slowly-walked")

(ix) Patient

(loop is an intransitive verb.)

(417) **dat die man die skoen loop*
 that the man the shoe walks

-er : **skoen - loop -ER*
 shoe walk -er

-end : **skoen - loop -END(e)*
 shoe walk -ing

ge- : **skoen - GE- loop(te)*
 shoe -ed walk
 (= "shoe-walked")

(x) Source

(418) *dat die kinders van die skool af loop*
 that the children from the school walks

-er : **van =die=skool =af - loop -ER*
 from the school walk -er

-end : **van =die=skool =af - loop -END(e)*
 from the school walk -ing

ge- : **van =die=skool =af - GE- loop(te)*
 from the school -ed walk
 (= "from the school-walked")

(xi) Temporality

(419) *dat die man in die oggend loop*
 that the man in the morning walks

-er : **(in=die=)oggend - loop -ER*
 (in the) morning walk -er

-end : **(in=die=)oggend - loop -END(e)*
 (in the) morning walk -ing

ge- : **(in=die=)oggend - GE- loop(te)*
 (in the) morning -ed walk
 (= "(in the) morning-walked")

(xii) Thematic relation x

(420) *dat Jan altyd n kortpad loop*
 that Jan always a short-cut walks

-er : *kortpad - loop -ER*
 short-cut walk -er

-end : **kortpad - loop -END(e)*
 short-cut walk -ing

ge- : **kortpad - GE- loop(te)*
 short-cut -ed walk
 (= "short-cut-walked")

(xiii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(421) *dat die kind loop*
 that the child walks

-er : *kind - loop -ER
 child walk -er

-end : *kind - loop -END(e)
 child walk -ing

ge- : *kind - GE- loop(te)
 child -ed walk
 (= "child-walked")

(xiv) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(loop is an intransitive verb.)

(422) **dat die man die skoene loop*
 that the man the shoes walks

-er : *skoene - loop -ER
 shoes walk -er

-end : *skoene - loop -END(e)
 shoes walk -ing

ge- : *skoene - GE- loop(te)
 shoes -ed walk
 (= "shoes-walked")

2.2.3.1.4 skaats ("skate")

Simple derivations: *skaats* -ER
 skate -er (= "skater")
skaats -END(e)
 skate -ing (= "skating")
 GE- *skaats*(te)
 -ed skate (= "skated")

a. Syntactic categories(i) Nouns

(423) *dat die kinders skaats*
that the children skate

-er : **kinders* - *skaats* -ER
children skate -er

-end : **kinders* - *skaats* -END(e)
children skate -ing

ge- : **kinders* - GE- *skaats(te)*
children -ed skate
 (= "children-skated")

(ii) Noun phrases

(424) *dat die groot kinders skaats*
that the big children skate

-er : **groot=kinders* - *skaats* -ER
big children skate -er

-end : **groot=kinders* - *skaats* -END(e)
big children skate -ing

ge- : **groot=kinders* - GE- *skaats(te)*
big children -ed skate
 (= "big children-skated")

(iii) Adjectives

(425) *dat die studente die gang glad skaats*
that the students the corridor slippery skate

-er : **glad* - *skaats* -ER
slippery skate -er

-end : **glad* - *skaats* -END(e)
slippery skate -ing

ge- : *glad* - GE- *skaats(te)*
slippery -ed skate
 (= "slippery-skated")

(426) *dat Pieter sy sokkies stukkend skaats*
 that Pieter his socks to rags skates

-er : **stukkend* - *skaats* -ER
 to rags skate -er

-end : **stukkend* - *skaats* -END(e)
 to rags skate -ing

ge- : *stukkend* - GE- *skaats*(te)
 to rags -ed skate
 (= "to rags-skated")

(iv) Adverbs

(427) *dat Pieter sierlik skaats*
 that Pieter gracefully skates

-er : **sierlik* - *skaats* -ER
 gracefully skate -er

-end : **sierlik* - *skaats* -END(e)
 gracefully skate -ing

ge- : **sierlik* - GE- *skaats*(te)
 gracefully -ed skate
 (= "gracefully-skated")

(428) *dat die mense soggens skaats*
 that the people in the morning skate

-er : **soggens* - *skaats* -ER
 in the morning skate -er

-end : **soggens* - *skaats* -END(e)
 in the morning skate -ing

ge- : **soggens* - GE- *skaats*(te)
 in the morning -ed skate
 (= "in the morning-skated")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(429) *dat die kinders in die gang skaats*
 that the children in the corridor skate

-er : (in=die)gang - *skaats* -ER
 (in the) corridor skate -er

-end : (*in=die=*) ? *gang* - *skaats* -END(e)
 (in the) corridor skate -ing

ge- : * (*in=die=*) *gang* - GE- *skaats(te)*
 (in the) corridor -ed skate
 (= " (in the) corridor-skated ")

(430) *dat mens gewoonlik op ys skaats*
 that one usually on ice skates

-er : (? *op=*) *ys* - *skaats* -ER
 (on) ice skate -er

-end : ? (*op=*) *ys* - *skaats* -END(e)
 (on) ice skate -ing

ge- : * (*op=*) *ys* - GE- *skaats(te)*
 (on) ice -ed skate
 (= " (on) ice-skated ")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(431) *dat die kampioen skaats*
 that the champion skates

-er : * *kampioen* - *skaats* -ER
 champion skate -er

-end : * *kampioen* - *skaats* -END(e)
 champion skate -ing

ge- : * *kampioen* - GE- *skaats(te)*
 champion -ed skate
 (= " champion-skated ")

(ii) Direct object

(*skaats* is an intransitive verb and therefore cannot take a direct object.)

(432) * *dat die mense die dam skaats*
 that the people the dam skate

-er : * *dam* - *skaats* -ER
 dam skate -er

-end : *dam - skaats -END(e)
dam skate -ing

ge- : *dam - GE- skaats(te)
dam -ed skate
(= "dam-skated")

(iii) Indirect object

(433) *dat die meeste mense net vir die plesier skaats*
that the most people only for the pleasure skate

-er : (vir=die=)plesier - skaats -ER
(for the) pleasure skate -er

-end : (vir=die=)*plesier - skaats -END(e)
(for the) pleasure skate -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)plesier - GE- skaats(te)
(for the) pleasure -ed skate
(= "(for the) pleasure-skated")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(434) *dat die kinders op die dam skaats*
that the children on the dam skate

-er : (op=die=)dam - skaats -ER
(on the) dam skate -er

-end : (op=die=)*dam - skaats -END(e)
(on the) dam skate -ing

ge- : *(op=die=)dam - GE- skaats(te)
(on the) dam -ed skate
(= "(on the) dam-skated")

(435) *dat mens op ys skaats*
that one on ice skates

-er : (?op=)ys - skaats -ER
(on) ice skate -er

-end : ?(op=)ys - skaats -END(e)
(on) ice skate -ing

ge- : *(op=)ys - GE- skaats(te)
(on) ice -ed skate
(= "(on) ice-skated")

(v) "Bare" object

(436) *dat die studente die gang glad skaats*
 that the students the corridor slippery skate

-er : *gang = glad - skaats -ER
 corridor slippery skate -er

-end : *gang = glad - skaats -END(e)
 corridor slippery skate -ing

ge- : *gang = glad - GE- skaats(te)
 corridor slippery -ed skate
 (= "corridor slippery-skated")

(437) *dat die kampioen 'n figuur skaats*
 that the champion a figure skates

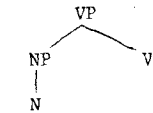
-er : figuur - skaats -ER
 figure skate -er

-end : figuur - skaats -END(e)
 figure skate -ing

ge- : *figuur - GE- skaats(te)
 figure -ed skate
 (= "figure-skated")

c: Structural Adjacency

(i)



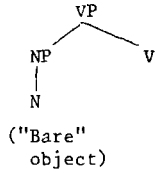
(Direct
object)

(438) **dat die mense die dam skaats*
 that the people the dam skate

-er : *dam - skaats -ER
 dam skate -er

-end : *dam - skaats -END(e)
 dam skate -ing

ge- : *dam - GE- skaats(te)
 dam -ed skate
 (= "dam-skated")



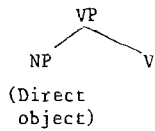
(439) *dat die skaatser 'n figuur skaats*
 that the skater a figure skates

-er : *figuur - skaats -ER*
 figure skate -er

-end : *figuur - skaats -END(e)*
 figure skate -ing

ge- : **figuur- GE- skaats(te)*
 figure -ed skate
 (= "figure-skated")

(ii)

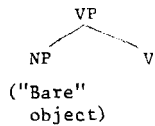


(440) **dat die kinders die groot dam skaats*
 that the children the big dam skate

-er : **groot=dam - skaats -ER*
 big dam skate -er

-end : **groot=dam - skaats -END(e)*
 big dam skate -ing

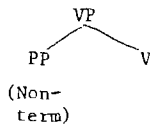
ge- : **groot=dam - GE- skaats(te)*
 big dam -ed skate
 (= "big dam-skated")



(441) *dat die kinders die ys dun skaats*
 that the children the ice thin skate

- er : *ys = dun - skaats -ER
ice thin skate -er
- end : *ys = dun - skaats -END(e)
ice thin skate -ing
- ge- : *ys = dun - GE- skaats(te)
ice thin -ed skate
(= "ice thin-skated")

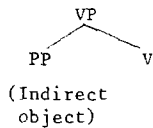
(iii)



- (442) dat mens gewoonlik op ys skaats
that people usually on ice skate

- er : (?op=)ys - skaats -ER
(on) ice skate -er
- end : ?(op=)ys - skaats -END(e)
(on) ice skate -ing
- ge- : *(op=)ys - GE- skaats(te)
(on) ice -ed skate
(= "(on) ice-skated")

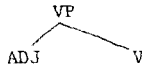
(iv)



- (443) dat die mense net vir die plesier skaats
that the people only for the pleasure skate

- er : (vir=die=)plesier - skaats -ER
(for the) pleasure skate -er
- end : (vir=die=)*plesier - skaats -END(e)
(for the) pleasure skate -ing
- ge- : *(vir=die=)plesier - GE- skaats(te)
(for the) pleasure -ed skate
(= "(for the) pleasure-skated")

(v)



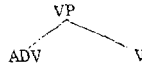
(444) *dat Pieter sy sokkies stukkend skaats*
 that Pieter his socks to rags skates

-er : *stukkend - skaats -ER
 to rags skate -er

-end : *stukkend - skaats -END(e)
 to rags skate -ing

ge- : stukkend - GE- skaats(te)
 to rags -ed skate
 (= "to rags-skated")

(vi)



(445) *dat Pieter sierlik skaats*
 that Pieter gracefully skates

-er : *sierlik - skaats -ER
 gracefully skate -er

-end : *sierlik - skaats -END(e)
 gracefully skate -ing

ge- : *sierlik - GE- skaats(te)
 gracefully -ed skate
 (= "gracefully-skated")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(446) *dat Jan saam met sy vriende skaats*
 that Jan together with his friends skates

-er : *saam = met =sy =vriende - skaats -ER
 together with his friends skate -er

-end : ?saam = met =sy =vriende - skaats -END(e)
 together with his friends skate -ing

ge- : *saam = met =sy =vriende - GE- skaats(te)
 together with his friends -ed skate
 (= "together with his friends-skated")

(ii) Agent

(447) *dat die kampioen skaats om die titel te behou*
 that the champion skates to the title keep

-er : *kampioen - skaats -ER
 champion skate -er

-end : *kampioen - skaats -END(e)
 champion skate -ing

ge- : *kampioen - GE- skaats(te)
 champion -ed skate
 (= "champion-skated")

(iii) Benefactive

(448) *dat die mense vir die plesier skaats*
 that the people for the pleasure skate

-er : (vir=die=)plesier - skaats -ER
 (for the) pleasure skate -er

-end : (vir=die=)*plesier - skaats -END(e)
 (for the) pleasure skate -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)plesier - GE- skaats(te)
 (for the) pleasure -ed skate
 (= "(for the) pleasure-skated")

(iv) Duration

(449) *dat die kinders vir 'n uur skaats*
 that the children for an hour skate

-er : *(vir=h=)uur - skaats -ER
 (for an) hour skate -er

-end : *(vir=h=)uur - skaats -END(e)
 (for an) hour skate -ing

ge- : *(vir=h=)uur - GE- skaats(te)
 (for an) hour -ed skate
 (= "(for an) hour-skated")

(v) Goal

(450) *dat die kampioen vir die beker skaats*
 that the champion for the cup skates

<u>-er</u>	:	?(vir-die=)beker - skaats -ER (for the) cup skate -er
<u>-end</u>	:	(vir-die=)*beker - skaats -END(e) (for the) cup skate -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(vir-die=)beker - GE- skaats(te) (for the) cup -ed skate (= "(for the) cup-skated")

(vi) Instrument

(451)	<i>dat</i>	<i>h mens</i>	<i>met</i>	<i>skaatse</i>	<i>skaats</i>
	that	one	with	skates	skates
<u>-er</u>	:	*(met=)skaatse - skaats -ER (with) skates skate -er			
<u>-end</u>	:	*(met=)skaatse - skaats -END(e) (with) skates skate -ing			
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(met=)skaatse - GE- skaats(te) (with skates -ed skate (= "(with) skates-skated")			

(vii) Location

(452)	<i>dat</i>	<i>mens</i>	<i>gewoonlik</i>	<i>op ys</i>	<i>skaats</i>
	that	one	usually	on ice	skates
<u>-er</u>	:	(?op=)ys - skaats -ER (on) ice skate -er			
<u>-end</u>	:	?(op=)ys - skaats -END(e) (on) ice skate -ing			
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(op=)ys - GE- skaats(te) (on) ice -ed skate (= "(on) ice-skated")			

(viii) Modality

(453)	<i>dat</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>kinders</i>	<i>behendig</i>	<i>skaats</i>
	that	the	children	skilfully	skate
<u>-er</u>	:	*behendig - skaats -ER skilfully skate -er			

-end : *behendig - skaats -END(e)
 skilfully skate -ing

ge- : *behendig - GE- skaats(te)
 skilfully -ed skate
 (= "skilfully-skated")

(ix) Patient

(skaats is an intransitive verb.)

(454) *dat die studente die gang skaats
 that the students the corridor skate

-er : *gang - skaats -ER
 corridor skate -er

-end : *gang - skaats -END(e)
 corridor skate -ing

ge- : *gang - GE- skaats(te)
 corridor -ed skate
 (= "corridor-skated")

(x) Source

(455) dat hulle uit die badkamer skaats
 that they out of the bathroom skate

-er : *(uit=die=)badkamer - skaats -ER
 (out of the) bathroom skate -er

-end : ?(uit=die=)badkamer - skaats -END(e)
 (out of the) bathroom skate -ing

ge- : *(uit=die=)badkamer - GE- skaats(te)
 (out of the) bathroom -ed skate
 (= "(out of the) bathroom-skated")

(xi) Temporality

(456) dat die groot kinders saans skaats
 that the big children in the evenings skate

-er : *saans - skaats -ER
 in the evenings skate -er

-end : *saans - skaats -END(e)
in the evenings skate -ing

ge- : *saans - GE- skaats(te)
in the evenings -ed skate
(= "in the evenings-skated")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(457) *dat die kampioen skaats*
that the champion skates

-er : *kampioen - skaats -ER
champion skate -er

-end : *kampioen - skaats -END(e)
champion skate -ing

ge- : *kampioen - GE- skaats(te)
champion -ed skate
(= "champion-skated")

(xiii) Thematic relation x

(458) *dat die student n figuur skaats*
that the student a figure skates

-er : figuur - skaats -ER
figure skate -er

-end : figuur - skaats -END(e)
figure skate -ing

ge- : *figuur - GE- skaats(te)
figure -ed skate
(= "figure-skated")

(xiv) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(skaats is an intransitive verb.)

(459) **dat die studente die gang skaats*
that the students the corridor skate

-er : *gang - skaats -ER
corridor skate -er

-end : *gang - skaats -END(e)
 corridor skate -ing

ge- : *gang - GE- skaats(te)
 corridor -ed skate
 (= "corridor-skated")

2.2.3.1.5 slaap ("sleep")

Simple derivations: *slaap* -ER
 sleep -er (= "sleeper")

slaap -END(e)
 sleep -ing (= "sleeping")

*GE- *slaap*(te)
 -ed sleep (= "slept")

a. Syntactic categories(i) Nouns

(460) *dat die baba slaap*
 that the baby sleeps

-er : *baba - *slaap* -ER
 baby sleep -er

-end : *baba - *slaap* -END(e)
 baby sleep -ing

ge- : *baba - GE- *slaap*(te)
 baby -ed sleep
 (= "baby-slept")

(ii) Noun phrases

(461) *dat die soet baba slaap*
 that the good baby sleeps

-er : *soet=baba - *slaap* -ER
 good baby sleep -er

-end : *soet=baba - *slaap* -END(e)
 good baby sleep -ing

ge- : *soet=baba - GE- *slaap*(te)
 good baby -ed sleep
 (= "good baby-slept")

(iii) Adjectives

(462) *dat die baba hom dronk slaap*
 that the baby himself befuddled sleeps

-er : **dronk* - *slaap* -ER
 befuddled sleep -er

-end : **dronk* - *slaap* -END(e)
 befuddled sleep -ing

ge- : *dronk* - GE- *slaap*(te)
 befuddled -ed sleep
 (= "befuddled-slept")

(iv) Adverbs

(463) *dat die kinders buite slaap*
 that the children out of doors sleep

-er : ?*buite* - *slaap* -ER
 out of doors sleep -er

-end : *buite* - *slaap* -END(e)
 out of doors sleep -ing

ge- : **buite* - GE- *slaap*(te)
 out of doors -ed sleep
 (= "out of doors-slept")

(464) *dat die baba vas slaap*
 that the baby soundly sleeps

-er : *vas* - *slaap* -ER
 soundly sleep -er

-end : *vas* - *slaap* -END(e)
 soundly sleep -ing

ge- : **vas* - GE- *slaap*(te)
 soundly -ed sleep
 (= "soundly-slept")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(465) *dat die baba gewoonlik in die oggend slaap*
 that the baby usually in the morning sleeps

- er : (in=die=)?oggend - slaap -ER
(in the) morning sleep -er
- end : (in=die=)*oggend - slaap -END(e)
(in the) morning sleep -ing
- ge- : *(in=die=)oggend - GE- slaap(te)
(in the) morning -ed sleep
(= "(in the) morning-slept")
- (466) *dat die baba in die wiegie slaap*
that the baby in the cradle sleeps
- er : (in=die=)wiegie - slaap -ER
(in the) cradle sleep -er
- end : (in=die=)*wiegie - slaap -END(e)
(in the) cradle sleep -ing
- ge- : *(in=die=)wiegie - GE- slaap(te)
(in the) cradle -ed sleep
(= "(in the) cradle-slept")

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

- (467) *dat die baba slaap*
that the baby sleeps
- er : *baba - slaap -ER
baby sleep -er
- end : *baba - slaap -END(e)
baby sleep -ing
- ge- : *baba - GE- slaap(te)
baby -ed sleep
(= "baby-slept")

(ii) Direct object

'slaap is an intransitive verb and therefore cannot take a direct object.)

- (468) **dat die baba die wiegie slaap*
that the baby the cradle sleeps

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>wiegie - slaap</i> -ER cradle sleep -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>wiegie - slaap</i> -END(e) cradle sleep -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>wiegie - GE- slaap</i> (te) cradle -ed sleep (= "cradle-slept")

(iii) Indirect object

(469) ?*dat die baba soet vir sy ma slaap*
that the baby sweetly for its mother sleeps

<u>-er</u>	:	*(<i>vir=sy</i> =) <i>ma - slaap</i> -ER (for its) mother sleep -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(<i>vir=sy</i> =) <i>ma - slaap</i> -END(e) (for its) mother sleep -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(<i>vir=sy</i> =) <i>ma - GE- slaap</i> (te) (for its) mother -ed sleep (= "(for its) mother-slept")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(470) *dat die baba in die wiegie slaap*
that the baby in the cradle sleeps

<u>-er</u>	:	(<i>in=die</i> =) <i>wiegie - slaap</i> -ER (in the) cradle sleep -er
<u>-end</u>	:	(<i>in=die</i> =) * <i>wiegie - slaap</i> -END(e) (in the) cradle sleep -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(<i>in=die</i> =) <i>wiegie - GE- slaap</i> (te) (in the) cradle -ed sleep (= "(in the) cradle-slept")

(471) *dat die meeste mense in die nag slaap*
that the most people in the night sleep

<u>-er</u>	:	(<i>in=die</i> =) ? <i>nag - slaap</i> -ER (in the) night sleep -er
<u>-end</u>	:	(<i>in=die</i> =) * <i>nag - slaap</i> -END(e) (in the) night sleep -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)nag - GE- slaap(te)
 (in the) night -ed sleep
 (= "(in the) night-slept")

(v) "Bare" object

(472) dat die baba 'n uur slaap
 that the baby an hour sleeps

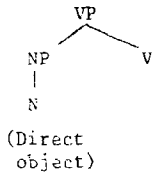
-er : *uur - slaap -ER
 hour sleep -er

-end : *uur - slaap -END(e)
 hour sleep -ing

ge- : *uur - GE- slaap(te)
 hour -ed sleep
 (= "hour-slept")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



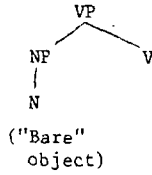
slaap is an intransitive verb.

(473) *dat die baba die wiegie slaap
 that the baby the cradle sleeps

-er : *wiegie - slaap -ER
 cradle sleep -er

-end : *wiegie - slaap -END(e)
 cradle sleep -ing

ge- : *wiegie - GE- slaap(te)
 cradle -ed sleep
 (= "cradle-slept")



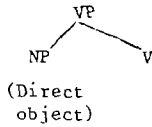
(474) *dat die baba n rukkie slaap*
 that the baby a while sleeps

-er : *rukkie - slaap -ER
 while sleep -er

-end : *rukkie - slaap -END(e)
 while sleep -ing

ge- : *rukkie - GE- slaap(te)
 while -ed sleep
 (= "while-slept")

(ii)

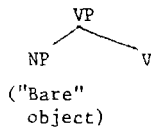


(475) **dat die oom die groot bed slaap*
 that the man the big bed sleeps

-er : *groot=bed - slaap -ER
 big bed sleep -er

-end : *groot=bed - slaap -END(e)
 big bed sleep -ing

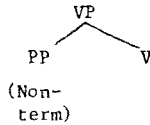
ge- : *groot=bed - GE- slaap(te)
 big bed -ed sleep
 (= "big bed-slept")



(476) *dat die baba twee uur slaap*
 that the baby two hours sleeps

- er : *twee-uur - slaap -ER
two hours sleep -er
- end : *twee-uur - slaap -END(e)
two hours sleep -ing
- ge- : *twee-uur - GE- slaap(te)
two hours -ed sleep
(= "two hours-slept")

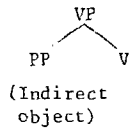
(iii)



(477) *dat die baba in die wiegie slaap*
that the baby in the cradle sleeps

- er : (in-die=)wiegie - slaap -ER
(in the) cradle sleep -er
- end : (in-die=)*wiegie - slaap -END(e)
(in the) cradle sleep -ing
- ge- : *(in-die=)wiegie - GE- slaap(te)
(in the) cradle -ed sleep
(= "(in the) cradle-slept")

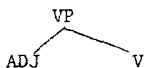
(iv)



(478) ?*dat die baba soet vir sy ma slaap*
that the baby sweetly for its mother sleeps

- er : *(vir=sy =)ma - slaap -ER
(for its) mother sleep -er
- end : *(vir=sy =)ma - slaap -END(e)
(for its) mother sleep -ing
- ge- : *(vir=sy =)ma - GE- slaap(te)
(for its) mother -ed sleep
(= "(for its) mother-slept")

(v)



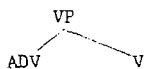
(479) *dat die baba hom dronk slaap*
 that the baby himself befuddled sleeps

-er : **dronk* - *slaap* -ER
 befuddled sleep -er

-end : **dronk* - *slaap* -END(e)
 befuddled sleep -ing

ge- : *dronk* - GE- *slaap*(te)
 befuddled -ed sleep
 (= "befuddled-slept")

(vi)



(480) *dat die kinders buite slaap*
 that the children out of doors sleep

-er : ?*buite* - *slaap* -ER
 out of doors sleep -er

-end : *buite* - *slaap* -END(e)
 out of doors sleep -ing

ge- : **buite* - GE- *slaap*(te)
 out of doors -ed sleep
 (= "out of doors-slept")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(481) *dat die baba nog met 'n doek slaap*
 that the baby still with a nappy sleeps

-er : (*met=n*)**doek* - *slaap* -ER
 (with a) nappy sleep -er

-end : (*met=n*)**doek* - *slaap* -END(e)
 (with a) nappy sleep -ing

ge- : *(met=n)doek - GE- slaap(te)
 (with a) nappy -ed sleep
 (= "(with a) nappy-slept")

(ii) Agent

(482) *dat die oom slaap om 'n bietjie te rus*
 that the man sleep to a little rest

-er : *oom - slaap -ER
 man sleep -er

-end : *oom - slaap -END(e)
 man sleep -ing

ge- : *oom - GE- slaap(te)
 man -ed sleep
 (= "man-slept")

(iii) Benefactive

(483) *?dat die baba soet vir sy ma slaap*
 that the baby sweetly for its mother sleeps

-er : *(vir=sy =)ma - slaap -ER
 (for its) mother sleep -er

-end : *(vir=sy =)ma - slaap -END(e)
 (for its) mother sleep -ing

ge- : *(vir=sy =)ma - GE- slaap(te)
 (for its) mother -ed sleep
 (= "(for its) mother-slept")

(iv) Duration

(484) *dat die baba vir 'n uur slaap*
 that the baby for an hour sleeps

-er : *(vir=n)uur - slaap -ER
 (for an) hour sleep -er

-end : *(vir=n)uur - slaap -END(e)
 (for an) hour sleep -ing

ge- : *(vir=n)uur - GE- slaap(te)
 (for an) hour -ed sleep
 (= "(for an) hour-slept")

(v) Goal

(485) *dat die meisie vir haar voorkoms slaap*
 that the girl for her looks sleeps

-er : (vir=haar=)*voorkoms - slaap -ER
 (for her) looks sleep -er

-end : ?(vir=haar=)*voorkoms - slaap -END(e)
 (for her) looks sleep -ing

ge- : *(vir=haar=)voorkoms - GE- slaap(te)
 (for her) looks -ed sleep
 (= "(for her) looks-slept")

(vi) Instrument

(486) *?dat sy gewoonlik met 'n slaappil slaap*
 that she usually with a sleeping tablet sleeps

-er : *(met =n=)slaappil - slaap -ER
 (with a) sleeping tablet sleep -er

-end : *(met =n=)slaappil - slaap -END(e)
 (with a) sleeping tablet sleep -ing

ge- : *(met =n=)slaappil - GE- slaap(te)
 (with a) sleeping tablet -ed sleep
 (= "(with a) sleeping tablet-slept")

(vii) Location

(487) *dat die baba in die wiegie slaap*
 that the baby in the cradle sleeps

-er : (in=die=)wiegie - slaap -ER
 (in the) cradle sleep -er

-end : (in=die=)*wiegie - slaap -END(e)
 (in the) cradle sleep -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)wiegie - GE- slaap(te)
 (in the) cradle -ed sleep
 (= "(in the) cradle-slept")

(viii) Modality

- (488) *dat die baba vas slaap*
 that the baby soundly sleeps
- er : *vas - slaap -ER*
 soundly sleep -er
- end : *vas - slaap -END(e)*
 soundly sleep -ing
- ge- : **vas - GE- slaap(te)*
 soundly -ed sleep
 (= "soundly slept")

(ix) Patient

(*slaap* is an intransitive verb.)

- (489) **dat die oom die bed slaap*
 that the man the bed sleeps
- er : **bed - slaap -ER*
 bed sleep -er
- end : **bed - slaap -END(e)*
 bed sleep -ing
- ge- : **bed - GE- slaap(te)*
 bed -ed sleep
 (= "bed-slept")

(x) Source

- (490) *dat die kind van uitputting slaap*
 that the child out of exhaustion sleeps
- er : **(van =)uitputting - slaap -ER*
 (out of) exhaustion sleep -er
- end : *(van =)*uitputting - slaap -END(e)*
 (out of) exhaustion sleep -ing
- ge- : **(van =)uitputting - GE- slaap(te)*
 (out of) exhaustion -ed sleep
 (= "(out of) exhaustion-slept")

(xi) Temporal

- (491) *dat die baba in die oggend slaap*
 that the baby in the morning sleeps
- er : *(in=die)?oggend - slaap -ER*
 (in the) morning sleep -er
- end : *(in=die)*oggend - slaap -END(e)*
 (in the) morning sleep -ing
- ge- : **(in=die)oggend - GE- slaap(te)*
 (in the) morning -ed sleep
 (= "(in the) morning-slept")

(xii) Thematic function x

- (492) *dat die baba h uur slaap*
 that the baby an hour sleeps
- er : **uur - slaap -ER*
 hour sleep -er
- end : **uur - slaap -END(e)*
 hour sleep -ing
- ge- : **uur - GE- slaap(te)*
 hour -ed sleep
 (= "hour-slept")

(xiii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

- (493) *dat die oom slaap*
 that the man sleeps
- er : **oom - slaap -ER*
 man sleep -er
- end : **oom - slaap -END(e)*
 man sleep -ing
- ge- : **oom - GE- slaap(te)*
 man -ed sleep
 (= "man-slept")

(xiv) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

- (494) **dat die oom die bed slaap*
 that the man the bed sleeps

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>bed</i> - <i>slaap</i> -ER bed sleep -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>bed</i> - <i>slaap</i> -END(e) bed sleep -ing
<u>-ge</u>	:	* <i>bed</i> - GE- <i>slaapte</i> bed -ed sleep (= "bed-slept")

2.2.3.1.6 staan ("stand")

Simple derivations:	<i>staan</i> -ER	
	stand -er	(= "stander")
	<i>staan</i> -END(e)	
	stand -ing	(= "standing")
	GE- <i>staan</i> (de)	
	-ed stand	(= "stood")

a. Syntactic categories(i) Nouns

(495) *dat die soldaat staan*
that the soldier stands

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>soldaat</i> - <i>staan</i> -ER soldier stand -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>soldaat</i> - <i>staan</i> -END(e) soldier stand -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>soldaat</i> - GE- <i>staan</i> (de) soldier -ed stand (= "soldier-stood")

(ii) Noun phrases

(496) *dat die moeë soldaat staan*
that the tired soldier stands

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>moeë = soldaat</i> - <i>staan</i> -ER tired soldier stand -er
------------	---	---

-end : *moeë = soldaat - staan -END(e)
tired soldier stand -ing

ge- : *moeë = soldaat - GE- staan(de)
tired soldier -ed stand
(= "tired soldier-stood")

(iii) Adjectives

(497) dat die geweer gelaai staan
that the rifle loaded stands

-er : *gelaai - staan -ER
loaded stand -er

-end : *gelaai - staan -END(e)
loaded stand -ing

ge- : *gelaai - GE- staan(de)
loaded -ed stand
(= "loaded-stood")

(iv) Adverbs

(498) dat die wag snags staan
that the sentry at night stands

-er : snags - staan -ER
at night stand -er

-end : snags - staan -END(e)
at night stand -ing

ge- : *snags - GE- staan(de)
at night -ed stand
(= "at night-stood")

(499) dat die boom krom staan
that the tree bent stands

-er : krom - staan -ER
bent stand -er

-end : krom - staan -END(e)
bent stand -ing

ge- : *krom - GE- staan(de)
bent -ed stand
(= "bent-stood")

(500) *dat die plant daar staan*
that the plant there stands

-er : **daar - staan -ER*
there stand -er

-end : **daar - staan -END(e)*
there stand -ing

ge- : **daar - GE- staan(de)*
there -ed stand
(= "there-stood")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(501) *dat die soldaat op aandag staan*
that the soldier to attention stands

-er : (*op=*)**aandag - staan -ER*
(to) attention stand -er

-end : (*op=*)**aandag - staan -END(e)*
(to) attention stand -ing

ge- : *(*op=*)**aandag - GE- staan(de)*
(to) attention -ed stand
(= "(to) attention-stood")

(502) *dat die beaen op die berg staan*
that the beacon on the mountain stands

-er : *(*op=die=*)**berg - staan -ER*
(on the) mountain stand -er

-end : (*op=die=*)**berg - staan -END(e)*
(on the) mountain stand -ing

ge- : *(*op=die=*)**berg - GE- staan(de)*
(on the) mountain -ed stand
(= "(on the) mountain-stood")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(503) *dat die perd staan*
that the horse stands

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>perd</i> - <i>staan</i> -ER horse stand -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>perd</i> - <i>staan</i> -END(e) horse stand -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>perd</i> - GE- <i>staan</i> (de) horse -ed stand (= "horse-stood")

(ii) Direct object

staan is an intransitive verb and therefore cannot take a direct object.)

(504) **dat die boer die stoep staan*
that the farmer the veranda stands

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>stoep</i> - <i>staan</i> -ER veranda stand -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>stoep</i> - <i>staan</i> -END(e) veranda stand -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>stoep</i> - GE- <i>staan</i> (de) veranda -ed stand (= "veranda -stood")

(iii) Indirect object

(505) *dat die oom vir die parlement staan*
that the man for the parliament stands

<u>-er</u>	:	*(<i>vir=die=</i>) <i>parlement</i> - <i>staan</i> -ER (for the) parliament stand -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(<i>vir=die=</i>) <i>parlement</i> - <i>staan</i> -END(e) (for the) parliament stand -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(<i>vir=die=</i>) <i>parlement</i> - GE- <i>staan</i> (de) (for the) parliament -ed stand (= "(for the) parliament-stood")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(506) *dat die boer net op die stoep staan*
that the farmer just on the veranda stands

- er : (op=die=)*stoep - staan -ER
(on the) veranda stand -er
- end : (op=die=)*stoep - staan -END(e)
(on the) veranda stand -ing
- ge- : *(op=die=)stoep - GE- staan(de)
(on the) veranda -ed stand
(= "(on the) veranda -stood")

(507) *dat die soldaat op aandag staan*
that the soldier to attention stands

- er : (op=)*aandag - staan -ER
(to) attention stand -er
- end : (op=)*aandag - staan -END(e)
(to) attention stand -ing
- ge- : *(op=)aandag - GE- staan(de)
(to) attention -ed stand
(= "(to) attention-stood")

(v) "Bare" object

(508) *dat die ryloper die hele dag staan*
that the hitch-hiker the whole day stands

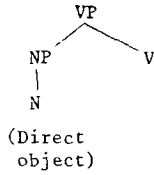
- er : *die=hele =dag - staan -ER
the whole day stand -er
- end : *die=hele =dag - staan -END(e)
the whole day stand -ing
- ge- : *die=hele =dag - GE- staan(de)
the whole day -ed stand
(= "the whole day-stood")

(509) *dat die perd heelpad staan*
that the horse all the way stands

- er : *heelpad - staan -ER
all the way stand -er
- end : *heelpad - staan -END(e)
all the way stand -ing
- ge- : *heelpad - GE- staan(de)
all the way -ed stand
(= "all the way-stood")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



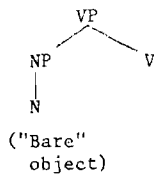
(stand is an intransitive verb and therefore cannot take a direct object.)

(510) *dat die boer die stoep staan
 that the farmer the veranda stands

-er : *stoep - staan -ER
 veranda stand -er

-end : *stoep - staan -END(e)
 veranda stand -ing

ge- : *stoep - GE- staan(de)
 veranda -ed stand
 (= "veranda -stood")



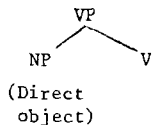
(511) *dat die perd die pad staan
 that the horse the road stands

-er : *pad - staan -ER
 road stand -er

-end : *pad - staan -END(e)
 road stand -ing

ge- : *pad - GE- staan(de)
 road -ed stand
 (= "road-stood")

(ii)

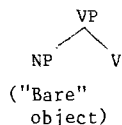


(512) *dat die boer die breë stoep staan
 that the farmer the wide veranda stands

-er : *breë=stoep - staan -ER
 wide veranda stand -er

-end : *breë=stoep - staan -END(e)
 wide veranda stand -ing

ge- : *breë=stoep - GE- staan(de)
 wide veranda -ed stand
 (= "wide veranda -stood")



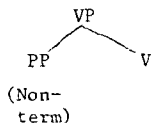
(513) dat die perd die hele pad staan
 that the horse all the way stands

-er : *die=hele=pad - staan -ER
 all the way stand -er

-end : *die=hele=pad - staan -END(e)
 all the way stand -ing

ge- : *die=hele=pad - GE- staan(de)
 all the way -ed stand
 (= "all the way-stood")

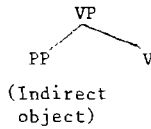
(iii)



(514) dat die soldaat op aandag staan
 that the soldier to attention stands

- er : (op=)*aandag - staan -ER
(to) attention stand -er
- end : (op=)*aandag - staan -END(e)
(to) attention stand -ing
- ge- : *(op=)aandag - GE- staan(de)
(to) attention -ed stand
(= "(to) attention-stood")

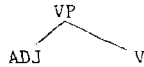
(iv)



- (515) *dat die oom vir die parlement staan*
that the man for the parliament stands

- er : *(vir=die=)parlement - staan -ER
(for the) parliament stand -er
- end : *(vir=die=)parlement - staan -END(e)
(for the) parliament stand -ing
- ge- : *(vir=die=)parlement - GE- staan(de)
(for the) parliament -ed stand
(= "(for the) parliament-stood")

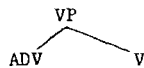
(v)



- (516) *dat die geweer gelaai staan*
that the rifle loaded stands

- er : *gelaai - staan -ER
loaded stand -er
- end : *gelaai - staan -END(e)
loaded stand -ing
- ge- : *gelaai - GE- staan(de)
loaded -ed stand
(= "loaded-stood")

(vi)



(517) *dat die blom regop staan*
 that the flower upright stands

-er : *regop - staan -ER*
 upright stand -er

-end : *regop - staan -END(e)*
 upright stand -ing

ge- : **regop - GE- staan(de)*
 upright -ed stand
 (= "upright-stood")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(518) *dat die hond by sy baas staan*
 that the dog beside his master stands

-er : **(by = sy =)baas - staan -ER*
 (beside his) master stand -er

-end : **(by = sy =)baas - staan -END(e)*
 (beside his) master stand -ing

ge- : **(by = sy =)baas - GE- staan(de)*
 (beside his) master -ed stand
 (= "(beside his) master-stood")

(ii) Agent

(519) *dat die soldaat staan om die hek op te pas*
 that the soldier stands to the gate guard

-er : **soldaat - staan -ER*
 soldier stand -er

-end : **soldaat - staan -END(e)*
 soldier stand -ing

ge- : **soldaat - GE- staan(de)*
 soldier -ed stand
 (= "soldier-stood")

(iii) Benefactive

(520) *dat die pa vir sy seun staan*
 that the father for his son stands

-er : *(vir=sy =)seun - staan -ER
 (for his) son stand -er

-end : *(vir=sy =)seun - staan -END(e)
 (for his) son stand -ing

ge- : *(vir=sy =)seun - GE- staan(de)
 (for his) son -ed stand
 (= "(for his) son-stood")

(iv) Duration

(521) *dat die soldaat vir twee uur staan*
 that the soldier for two hours stands

-er : *(vir=)twee=uur - staan -EP
 (for) two hours stand -er

-end : *(vir=)twee=uur - staan -END(e)
 (for) two hours stand -ing

ge- : *(vir=)twee=uur - GE- staan(āz)
 (for) two hours -ed stand
 (= "(for) two hours-stood")

(v) Goal

(522) *dat die man vir die Parlement staan*
 that the man for the Parliament stands

-er : *(vir=die=)Parlement - staan -ER
 (for the) Parliament stand -er

-end : *(vir=die=)Parlement - staan -END(e)
 (for the) Parliament stand -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)Parlement - GE- staan(de)
 (for the) Parliament -ed stand
 (= "(for the) Parliament-stood")

(vi) Instrument

(523) *dat 'n mens met jou bene staan*
 that one with one's legs stands

-er : *(met =)jou=bene - staan -ER
 (with) one's legs stand -er

- end : *(met =)jou = bene - staan -END(e)
(with) one's legs stand -ing
- ge- : *(met =)jou = bene - GE- staan(de)
(with) one's legs -ed stand
(= "(with) one's legs-stood")

(vii) Location

- (524) *dat die boer op die stoep staan*
that the farmer on the veranda stands
- er : (op=die=)stoep - staan -ER
(on the) veranda stand -er
- end : (op=die=)*stoep - staan -END(e)
(on the) veranda stand -ing
- ge- : *(op=die=)stoep - GE- staan(de)
(on the) veranda -ed stand
(= "(on the) veranda -stood")

(viii) Modality

- (525) *dat die kind regop staan*
that the child upright stands
- er : regop - staan -ER
upright stand -er
- end : regop - staan -END(e)
upright stand -ing
- ge- : *regop - GE- staan(de)
upright -ed stand
(= "upright-stood")

(ix) Patient

(staan is an intransitive verb.)

- (526) *dat die oom die stoep staan*
that the man the veranda stands
- er : *stoep - staan -ER
veranda stand -er

-end : *stoep - staan -END(e)
veranda stand -ing

ge- : *stoep - GE- staan(de)
veranda -ed stand
(= "veranda -stood")

(x) Source

(527) ?dat mens van die grond af staan
that one from the ground off stands

-er : *van die grond af - staan -ER
from the ground off stand -er

-end : *van die grond af - staan -END(e)
from the ground off stand -ing

ge- : *van die grond af - GE- staan(de)
from the ground off -ed stand
(= "from the ground off-stood")

(xi) Temporality

(528) dat die wag snags staan
that the sentry at night stands

-er : snags - staan -ER
at night stand -er

-end : snags - staan -END(e)
at night stand -ing

ge- : *snags - GE- staan(de)
at night -ed stand
(= "at night-stood")

(xii) Thematic function x

(529) dat die perd die hele pad staan
that the horse all the way stands

-er : *(die=)hele pad - staan -ER
all the way stand -er

-end : *(die=)hele pad - staan -END(e)
all the way stand -ing

ge- : *(die=)hele pad - GE- staan(de)
 all the way -ed stand
 (= "all the way-stood")

(xiii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(530) *dat die perd staan*
 that the horse stands

-er : *perd - staan -ER
 horse stand -er

-end : *perd - staan -END(e)
 horse stand -ing

ge- : *perd - GE- staan(de)
 horse -ed stand
 (= "horse-stood")

(xiv) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(staan is an intransitive verb.)

(531) **dat die boer die stoep staan*
 that the farmer the veranda stands

-er : *stoep - staan -ER
 veranda stand -er

-end : *stoep - staan -END(e)
 veranda stand -ing

ge- : *stoep - GE- staan(de)
 veranda -ed stand
 (= "veranda -stood")

2.2.3.1.7 werk ("work")

Simple derivations: *werk* -ER
 work -er (= "worker")
werk -END(e)
 work -ing (= "working")
 GE- *werk*(te)
 -ed work (= "worked")

a. Syntactic categories(i) Nouns

(532) *dat die esel werk*
 that the donkey works

-er : **esel - werk -ER*
 donkey work -er

-end : **esel - werk -END(e)*
 donkey work -ing

ge- : **esel - GE- werk(te)*
 donkey -ed work
 (= "donkey-worked")

(ii) Noun phrases

(533) *dat die vaal esel werk*
 that the grey donkey works

-er : **vaal= esel - werk -ER*
 grey donkey work -er

-end : **vaal= esel - werk -END(e)*
 grey donkey work -ing

ge- : **vaal= esel - GE- werk(te)*
 grey donkey -ed work
 (= "grey donkey-worked")

(iii) Adjectives

(534) *dat Jan die seun moeg werk*
 that Jan the boy tired works

-er : **moeg - werk -ER*
 tired work -er

-end : **moeg - werk -END(e)*
 tired work -ing

ge- : **moeg - GE- werk(te)*
 tired -ed work
 (= "tired-worked")

(iv) Adverbs

(535) *dat die vrou hard werk*
 that the woman hard works

-er : *hard - werk -ER
 hard work -er

-end : hard - werk -END(e)
 hard work -ing

ge- : *hard - GE- werk(te)
 hard -ed work
 (= "hard-worked")

(536) *dat die tuinier deeglik werk*
 that the gardener thoroughly works

-er : *deeglik - werk -ER
 thoroughly work -er

-end : *deeglik - werk -END(e)
 thoroughly work -ing

ge- : *deeglik - GE- werk(te)
 thoroughly -ed work
 (= "thoroughly-worked")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(537) *dat die meisie in die fabriek werk*
 that the girl in the factory works

-er : (?in=die=)fabriek - werk -ER
 (in the) factory work -er

-end : (in=die=)*fabriek - werk -END(e)
 (in the) factory work -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)fabriek - GE- werk(te)
 (in the) factory -ed work
 (= "(in the) factory-worked")

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

(538) *dat die esel werk*
 that the donkey works

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>esel</i> - <i>werk</i> -ER donkey work -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>esel</i> - <i>werk</i> -END(e) donkey work -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>esel</i> - GE- <i>werk</i> (te) donkey -ed work (= "donkey-worked")

(ii) Direct object

Werk is an intransitive verb and therefore cannot take a direct object.)

(539) **dat die boer die esel werk*
that the farmer the donkey works

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>esel</i> - <i>werk</i> -ER donkey work -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>esel</i> - <i>werk</i> -END(e) donkey work -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>esel</i> - GE- <i>werk</i> (te) donkey -ed work (= "donkey-worked")

(iii) Indirect object

(540) *dat die esel vir die boer werk*
that the donkey for the farmer works

<u>-er</u>	:	(<i>vir=die=</i>)* <i>boer</i> - <i>werk</i> -ER (for the) farmer work -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(<i>vir=die=</i>)* <i>boer</i> - <i>werk</i> -END(e) (for the) farmer work -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(<i>vir=die=</i>)* <i>boer</i> - GE- <i>werk</i> (te) (for the) farmer -ed work (= "(for the) farmer-worked")

(541) *dat Jan vir die regering werk*
that Jan for the government works

<u>-er</u>	:	(<i>vir=die=</i>)* <i>regering</i> - <i>werk</i> -ER (for the) government work -er
------------	---	---

-end : *(vir=die=)regering - werk -END(e)
(for the) government work -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)regering - GE- werk(te)
(for the) government -ed work
(= "(for the) government-worked")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(542) *dat die man in die fabriek werk*
that the man in the factory works

-er : (?in=die=)fabriek - werk -ER
(in the) factory work -er

-end : '(in=die=)*fabriek - werk -END(e)
(in the) factory work -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)fabriek - GE- werk(te)
(in the) factory -ed work
(= "(in the) factory-worked")

(543) *dat hy vir die vakansie werk*
that he during the holiday works

-er : (?vir=die=)vakansie - werk -ER
(during the) holiday work -er

-end : (vir=die=)*vakansie - werk -END(e)
(during the) holiday work -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)vakansie - GE- werk(te)
(during the) holiday -ed work
(= "(during the) holiday-worked")

(v) "Bare" object

(544) *dat die student n uur werk*
that the student an hour works

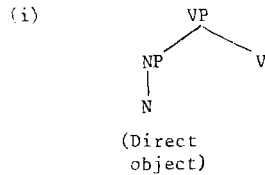
-er : *uur - werk -ER
hour work -er

-end : *uur - werk -END(e)
hour work -ing

ge- : *uur - GE- werk(te)
hour -ed work
(= "hour-worked")

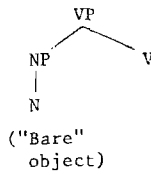
- (545) *dat sy die hele dag werk*
 that she the whole day works
- er : *hele =dag - werk -ER
 whole day work -er
- end : *hele =dag - werk -END(e)
 whole day work -ing
- ge- : *hele =dag - GE- werk(te)
 whole day -ed work
 (= "whole day-worked")

c. Structural adjacency



(*werk* is an intransitive verb.)

- (546) **dat die boer die esel werk*
 that the farmer the donkey works
- er : *esel - werk -ER
 donkey work -er
- end : *esel - werk -END(e)
 donkey work -ing
- ge- : *esel - GE- werk(te)
 donkey -ed work
 (= "donkey-worked")



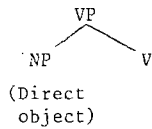
- (547) *dat die student n uur werk*
 that the student an hour works

-er : *uur - werk -ER
 hour work -er

-end : *uur - werk -END(e)
 hour work -ing

ge- : *uur - GE- werk(te)
 hour -ed work
 (= "hour-worked")

(ii)

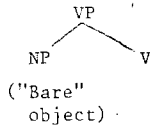


(548) *dat die boer die vet esel werk
 that the farmer the fat donkey works

-er : *vet=esel - werk -ER
 fat donkey work -er

-end : *vet=esel - werk -END(e)
 fat donkey work -ing

ge- : *vet=esel - GE- werk(te)
 fat donkey -ed work
 (= "fat donkey-worked")



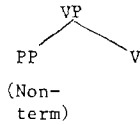
(549) dat die meisie die hele dag werk
 that the girl the whole day works

-er : *hele =dag - werk -ER
 whole day work -er

-end : *hele =dag - werk -END(e)
 whole day work -ing

ge- : *hele =dag - GE- werk(te)
 whole day -ed work
 (= "whole day-worked")

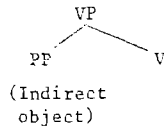
(iii)



(550) *dat die man in die fabriek werk*
 that the man in the factory works

- er : (*in=die=*)*fabriek* - *werk* -ER
 (in the) factory work -er
- end : (*in=die=*)**fabriek* - *werk* -END(e)
 (in the) factory work -ing
- ge- : *(*in=die=*)*fabriek* - GE- *werk*(te)
 (in the) factory -ed work
 (= "(in the) factory-worked")

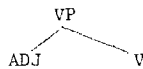
(iv)



(551) *dat die esel vir die boer werk*
 that the donkey for the farmer works

- er : (*vir=die=*)**boer* - *werk* -ER
 (for the) farmer work -er
- end : *(*vir=die=*)*boer* - *werk* -END(e)
 (for the) farmer work -ing
- ge- : *(*vir=die=*)*boer* - GE- *werk*(te)
 (for the) farmer -ed work
 (= "(for the) farmer-worked")

(v)



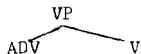
(552) *dat Jan die seun moeg werk*
 that Jan the boy tired works

- er : **moeg* - *werk* -ER
 tired work -er

-end : *moeg - werk -END(e)
tired work -ing

ge- : moeg - GE- werk(te)
tired -ed work
(= "tired-worked")

(vi)



(553) dat die vrou hard werk
that the woman hard works

-er : *hard - werk -ER
hard work -er

-end : hard - werk -END(e)
hard work -ing

ge- : *hard - GE- werk(te)
hard -ed work
(= "hard-worked")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(554) dat die boer saam met sy esel werk
that the farmer together with his donkey works

-er : *saam = met =sy =esel - werk -ER
together with his donkey work -er

-end : saam = met =sy =esel - werk -END(e)
together with his donkey work -ing

ge- : *saam = met =sy =esel - GE- werk(te)
together with his donkey -ed work
(= "together with his donkey-worked")

(ii) Agent

(555) dat die vrou werk om geld te verdien
that the woman works to money earn

-er : *vrou - werk -ER
woman work -er

-end : *vrou - werk -END(e)
 woman work -ing

ge- : *vrou - GE- werk(te)
 woman -ed work
 (= "woman-worked")

(iii) Benefactive

(556) dat die eesl vir die boer werk
 that the donkey for the farmer works

-er : (vir=die)*boer - werk -ER
 (for the) farmer work -er

-end : *(vir=die)boer - werk -END(e)
 (for the) farmer work -ing

ge- : *(vir=die)boer - GE- werk(te)
 (for the) farmer -ed work
 (= "(for the) farmer-worked")

(iv) Duration

(557) dat Susan vir h uur werk
 that Susan for an hour works

-er : *(vir=h)uur - werk -ER
 (for an) hour work -er

-end : *(vir=h)uur - werk -END(e)
 (for an) hour work -ing

ge- : *(vir=h)uur - GE- werk(te)
 (for an) hour -ed work
 (= "(for an) hour-worked")

(v) Goal

(558) dat die seun vir h fiets werk
 that the boy for a bicycle works

-er : (vir=h)*fiets - werk -ER
 (for a) bicycle work -er

-end : (vir=h)*fiets - werk -END(e)
 (for a) bicycle work -ing

ge- : **(vir=h=)fiets - GE- werk(te)*
 (for a) bicycle -ed work
 (= "(for a) bicycle-worked")

(vi) Instrument

(559) *dat die meisie met die masjien werk*
 that the girl with the machine works

-er : *(*met= die=)masjien - werk -ER*
 (with the) machine work -er

-end : *(met =die=)*masjien - werk -END(e)*
 (with the) machine work -ing

ge- : **(met =die)masjien - GE- werk(te)*
 (with the) machine -ed work
 (= "(with the) machine-worked")

(vii) Location

(560) *dat die man in die fabriek werk*
 that the man in the factory works

-er : *(?in=die=)fabriek - werk -ER*
 (in the) factory work -er

-end : *(in=die=)*fabriek - werk -END(e)*
 (in the) factory work -ing

ge- : **(in=die=)fabriek - GE- werk(te)*
 (in the) factory -ed work
 (= "(in the) factory-worked")

(viii) Modality

(561) *dat die seun hard werk*
 that the boy hard works

-er : **hard - werk -ER*
 hard work -er

-end : *hard - werk -END(e)*
 hard work -ing

ge- : **hard - GE- werk(te)*
 hard -ed work
 (= "hard-worked")

(ix) Patient

(werk is an intransitive verb and cannot take a direct object.)

(562) *dat die boer die esel werk
that the farmer the donkey works

-er : *esel - werk -ER
donkey work -er

-end : *esel - werk -END(e)
donkey work -ing

ge- : *esel - GE- werk(te)
donkey -ed work
(= "donkey-worked")

(x) Source

(563) ?dat die kinders met energie werk
that the children with energy work

-er : *(met =) energie - werk -ER
(with) energy work -er

-end : *(met =) energie - werk -END(e)
(with) energy work -ing

ge- : *(met =) energie - GE- werk(te)
(with) energy -ed work
(= "(with) energy-worked")

(xi) Temporality

(564) dat die vrou in die oggend werk
that the woman in the morning works

-er : ?(in=die) oggend - werk -ER
(in the) morning work -er

-end : (in=die) *oggend - werk -END(e)
(in the) morning work -ing

ge- : *(in=die) oggend - GE- werk(te)
(in the) morning -ed work
(= "(in the) morning-worked")

(xii) Thematic relation x

(565) *dat die student n uur werk*
 that the student an hour works

-er : *uur - werk -ER
 hour work -er

-end : *uur - werk -END(e)
 hour work -ing

ge- : *uur - GE- werk(te)
 hour -ed work
 (= "hour-worked")

(xiii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(566) *dat die esel werk*
 that the donkey works

-er : *esel - werk -ER
 donkey work -er

-end : *esel - werk -END(e)
 donkey work -ing

ge- : *esel - GE- werk(te)
 donkey -ed work
 (= "donkey-worked")

(xiv) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(werk is an intransitive verb.)

(567) **dat die boer die esel werk*
 that the farmer the donkey works

-er : *esel - werk -ER
 donkey work -er

-end : *esel - werk -END(e)
 donkey work -ing

ge- : *esel - GE- werk(te)
 donkey -ed work
 (= "donkey-worked")

2.2.3.2 Intransitive verbs without "object"

These verbs can take no "bare" object.

2.2.3.2.1 pyn ("ache")

Simple derivations:	*pyn	-ER	
	ache	-er	
	pyn	-END(e)	
	ache	-ing	(= "aching")
	?GE-	pyn(de)	
	-ed	ache	(= "ached")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(568) dat die voet pyn
 that the foot aches

-er : *voet - pyn -ER
 foot ache -er

-end : *voet - pyn -END(e)
 foot ache -ing

ge- : *voet - GE- pyn(de)
 foot -ed ache
 (= "foot-ached")

(569) dat Piet se voet van die stamp pyn
 that Piet 's foot from the knock aches

-er : *stamp - pyn -ER
 knock ache -er

-end : *stamp - pyn -END(e)
 knock ache -ing

ge- : *stamp - GE- pyn(de)
 knock -ed ache
 (= "knock-ached")

(ii) Noun phrases

(570) *dat die vuil voet pyn*
 that the dirty foot aches

-er : *vuil =voet - pyn -ER
 dirty foot ache -er

-end : *vuil =voet - pyn -END(e)
 dirty foot ache -ing

ge- : *vuil =voet - GE- pyn(de)
 dirty foot -ed ache
 (= "dirty foot-ached")

(iii) Adjectives

(571) **dat Jan se voet gebreek pyn*
 that Jan's foot broken aches

-er : *gebreek - pyn -ER
 broken ache -er

-end : *gebreek - pyn -END(e)
 broken ache -ing

ge- : *gebreek - GE- pyn(de)
 broken -ed ache
 (= "broken-ached")

(iv) Adverbs

(572) *dat die soldaat se wonde baie pyn*
 that the soldier's wounds a lot ache

-er : *baie - pyn -ER
 a lot ache -er

-end : *baie - pyn -END(e)
 a lot ache -ing

ge- : *baie - GE- pyn(de)
 a lot -ed ache
 (= "a lot-ached")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(573) dat die voet van die stamp pyn
 that the foot from the knock aches

-er : *(van =die=)stamp - pyn -ER
 (from the) knock ache -er

-end : (van =die=)*stamp - pyn -END(e)
 (from the) knock ache -ing

ge- : *(van =die=)stamp - GE- pyn(de)
 (from the) knock -ed ache
 (= "(from the) knock-ached")

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

(574) dat die voet pyn
 that the foot aches

-er : *voet - pyn -ER
 foot ache -er

-end : *voet - pyn -END(e)
 foot ache -ing

ge- : *voet - GE- pyn(de)
 foot -ed ache
 (= "foot-ached")

(ii) Direct object

(pyn is an intransitive verb and therefore cannot take a direct object.)

(575) *dat die wond die soldaat pyn
 that the wound the soldier aches

-er : *soldaat - pyn -ER
 soldier ache -er

-end : *soldaat - pyn -END(e)
 soldier ache -ing

ge- : *soldaat - GE- pyn(de)
 soldier -ed ache
 (= "soldier-ached")

(iii) Indirect object

(576) *dat die voet vir die seun pyn
 that the foot for the boy aches

-er : *(vir=die=)seun - pyn -ER
 (for the) boy ache -er

-end : *(vir=die=)seun - pyn -END(e)
 (for the) boy ache -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)seun - GE- pyn(de)
 (for the) boy -ed ache
 (= "(for the) boy-ached")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(577) dat die voet van die stamp pyn
 that the foot from the knock aches

-er : *(van= die=)stamp - pyn -ER
 (from the) knock ache -er

-end : (van =die=)*stamp - pyn -END(e)
 (from the) knock ache -ing

ge- : *(van =die=)stamp - GE- pyn(de)
 (from the) knock -ed ache
 (= "(from the) knock-ached")

(578) dat die vinger in die lit pyn
 that the finger in the joint aches

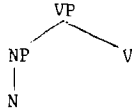
-er : *(in=die=)lit - pyn -ER
 (in the) joint ache -er

-end : (in=die=)*lit - pyn -END(e)
 (in the) joint ache -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)lit - GE- pyn(de)
 (in the) joint -ed ache
 (= "(in the) joint-ached")

c. Structural Adjacency

(i)



(pyn is an intransitive verb.)

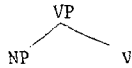
(579) *dat die wond die soldaat pyn
 that the wound the soldier aches

-er : *soldaat - pyn -ER
 soldier ache -er

-end : *soldaat - pyn -END(e)
 soldier ache -ing

ge- : *soldaat - GE- pyn(de)
 soldier -ed ache
 (= "soldier-ached")

(ii)



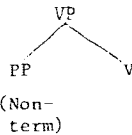
(580) *dat die wond die swak soldaat pyn
 that the wound the weak soldier aches

-er : *swak=soldaat - pyn -ER
 weak soldier ache -er

-end : *swak=soldaat - pyn -END(e)
 weak soldier ache -ing

ge- : *swak=soldaat - GE- pyn(de)
 weak soldier -ed ache
 (= "weak soldier-ached")

(iii)



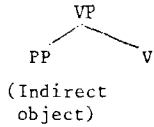
(581) *dat die vinger in die lit pyn*
 that the finger in the joint aches

-er : *(in=die=)lit - pyn -ER
 (in the) joint ache -er

-end : (in=die=)*lit - pyn -END(e)
 (in the) joint ache -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)lit - GE- pyn(de)
 (in the) joint -ed ache
 (= "(in the) joint-ached")

(iv)



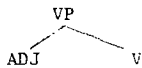
(582) **dat die voet vir die seun pyn*
 that the foot for the boy aches

-er : *(vir=die=)seun - pyn -ER
 (for the) boy ache -er

-end : *(vir=die=)seun - pyn -END(de)
 (for the) boy ache -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)seun - GE- pyn(de)
 (for the) boy -ed ache
 (= "(for the) boy-ached")

(v)



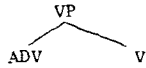
(583) **dat die voet gebreek pyn*
 that the foot broken aches

-er : *gebreek - pyn -ER
 broken ache -er

-end : *gebreek - pyn -END(e)
 broken ache -ing

ge- : *gebreek - GE- pyn(de)
 broken -ed ache
 (= "broken-ached")

(vi)



(584) *dat die wonde hewiglik pyn*
 that the wounds intensely ache

-er : *hewiglik - pyn -ER
 intensely ache -er

-end : *hewiglik - pyn -END(e)
 intensely ache -ing

ge- : *hewiglik - GE- pyn(de)
 intensely -ed ache
 (= "intensely-ached")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(585) *dat die voet saam met die been pyn*
 that the foot together with the leg aches

-er : *saam = met =die=been - pyn -ER
 together with the leg ache -er

-end : *saam = met =die=been - pyn -END(e)
 together with the leg ache -ing

ge- : *saam = met =die=been - GE- pyn(de)
 together with the leg -ed ache
 (= "together with the leg-ached")

(ii) Agent

(586) *dat die been pyn van reumatiek*
 that the leg aches because of rheumatism

-er : *been - pyn -ER
 leg ache -er

-end : *been - pyn -END(e)
 leg ache -ing

ge- : *been - GE- pyn(de)
 leg -ed ache
 (= "leg-ached")

(iii) Benefactive

- (587) **dat die voet vir die seun pyn*
 that the foot for the boy aches
- er : *(vir=die=)seun - pyn -ER
 (for the) boy ache -er
- end : *(vir=die=)seun - pyn -END(e)
 (for the) boy ache -ing
- ge- : *(vir=die=)seun - GE- pyn(de)
 (for the) boy -ed ache
 (= "(for the) boy-ached")

(iv) Duration

- (588) *dat die voet vir 'n dag pyn*
 that the foot for a day aches
- er : *(vir=n=dag - pyn -ER
 (for a) day ache -er
- end : *(vir=n=dag - pyn -END(e)
 (for a) day ache -ing
- ge- : *(vir=n=dag - GE- pyn(de)
 (for a) day -ed ache
 (= "(for a) day-ached")

(v) Goal

- (589) ?*dat die wond tot my ongemak pyn*
 that the wound to my inconvenience aches
- er : *(tot=my=)ongemak - pyn -ER
 (to my) inconvenience ache -er
- end : *(tot=my=)ongemak - pyn -END(e)
 (to my) inconvenience ache -ing
- ge- : *(tot=my=)ongemak - GE- pyn(de)
 (to my) inconvenience -ed ache
 (= "(to my) inconvenience-ached")

(vi) Instrument

(590)	<i>?dat</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>wond</i>	<i>met</i>	<i>steke</i>	<i>pyn</i>
	that	the	wound	with	spasms (of pain)	aches
	<u>-er</u>	:	*(met=)steke - pyn -ER (with) spasms ache -er			
	<u>-end</u>	:	*(met=)steke - pyn -END(e) (with) spasms ache -ing			
	<u>ge-</u>	:	*(met=)steke - GE- pyn(de) (with) spasms -ed ache (= "(with) spasms-ached")			

(vii) Location

(591)	<i>dat</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>vinger</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>lit</i>	<i>pyn</i>
	that	the	finger	in	the	joint	aches
	<u>-er</u>	:	*(in=die=)lit - pyn -ER (in the) joint ache -er				
	<u>-end</u>	:	(in=die=)*lit - pyn -END(e) (in the) joint ache -ing				
	<u>ge-</u>	:	*(in=die=)lit - GE- pyn(de) (in the) joint -ed ache (= "(in the) joint-ached")				

(ix) Patient

(592)	<i>dat</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>wond</i>	<i>baie</i>	<i>pyn</i>
	that	the	wound	a lot	aches
	<u>-er</u>	:	*baie - pyn -ER a lot ache -er		
	<u>-end</u>	:	*baie - pyn -END(e) a lot ache -ing		
	<u>ge-</u>	:	*baie - GE- pyn(de) a lot -ed ache (= "a lot-ached")		

(ix) Patient

(pyn is an intransitive verb.)

(593) *dat die wond die soldaat pyn
that the wound the soldier aches-er : *soldaat - pyn -ER
soldier ache -er-end : *soldaat - pyn -END(e)
soldier ache -ingge- : *soldaat - GE- pyn(de)
soldier -ed ache
(= "soldier-ached")(x) Source(594) dat die voet van die stamp pyn
that the foot from the knock aches-er : *(van =die=)stamp - pyn -ER
(from the) knock ache -er-end : (van =die=)stamp - pyn -END(e)
(from the) knock ache -ingge- : *(van =die=)stamp - GE- pyn(de)
(from the) knock -ed ache
(= "(from the) knock-ached")(xi) Temporality(595) dat die been in die nag pyn
that the leg in the night aches-er : *(in=die=)nag - pyn -ER
(in the) night ache -er-end : *(in=die=)nag - pyn -END(e)
(in the) night ache -ingge- : *(in=die=)nag - GE- pyn(de)
(in the) night -ed ache
(= "(in the) night-ached")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(596) *dat die wond pyn*
 that the wound aches

-er : *wond - pyn -ER
 wound ache -er

-end : *wond - pyn -END(e)
 wound ache -ing

ge- : *wond - GE- pyn(de)
 wound -ed ache
 (= "wound-ached")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(*pyn* is an intransitive verb.)

(597) **dat die wond die soldaat pyn*
 that the wound the soldier aches

-er : *soldaat - pyn -ER
 soldier ache -er

-end : *soldaat - pyn --END(e)
 soldier ache -ing

ge- : *soldaat - GE- pyn(de)
 soldier -ed ache
 (= "soldier-ached")

2.2.3.2.2 rook ("smoke")

Simple derivations: *rook -ER
 smoke -er (= "smoker")
 rook -END(e)
 smoke -ing (= "smoking")
 GE- rook(te)
 -ed smoke (= "smoked")

a. Syntactic categories(i) Nouns

(598) *dat die skoorsteer rook*
 that the chimney smokes

-er : *skoorsteer - rook -ER
 chimney smoke -er

-end : *skoorsteer - rook -END(e)
 chimney smoke -ing

ge- : *skoorsteer - GE- rook(te)
 chimney -ed smoke
 (= "chimney-smoked")

(ii) Noun phrases

(599) *dat nat hout rook*
 that wet wood smokes

-er : *nat=hout - rook -ER
 wet wood smoke -er

-end : *nat=hout - rook -END(e)
 wet wood smoke -ing

ge- : *nat=hout - GE- rookte
 wet wood -ed smoke
 (= "wet wood-smoked")

(iii) Adjectives

(600) *dat die vuur die muur swart rook*
 that the fire the wall black smokes

-er : *swart - rook -ER
 black smoke -er

-end : *swart - rook -END(e)
 black smoke -ing

ge- : *swart - GE- rook(te)
 black -ed smoke
 (= "black-smoked")

(iv) Adverbs

(601) *dat die skoorsteen baie rook*
 that the chimney a lot smokes

-er : *baie - rook -ER
 a lot smoke -er

-end : *baie - rook -END(e)
 a lot smoke -ing

ge- : *baie - GE- rook(te)
 a lot -ed smoke
 (= "a lot-smoked")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(602) *dat die brandende hout in die reën rook*
 that the burning wood in the rain smokes

-er : *(in=die=)reën - rook -ER
 (in the) rain smoke -er

-end : ?(in=die=)reën - rook -END(e)
 (in the) rain smoke -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)reën - GE- rook(te)
 (in the) rain -ed smoke
 (= "(in the) rain-smoked")

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

(603) *dat die skoorsteen rook*
 that the chimney smokes

-er : *skoorsteen - rook -ER
 chimney smoke -er

-end : *skoorsteen - rook -END(e)
 chimney smoke -ing

ge- : *skoorsteen - GE- rook(te)
 chimney -ed smoke
 (= "chimney-smoked")

(ii) Direct object

(rook is an intransitive verb and therefore cannot take a direct object.)

(604) *dat die hout die hoop rook
 that the wood the heap smokes

-er : *hoop - rook -ER
 heap smoke -er

-end : *hoop - rook -END(e)
 heap smoke -ing

ge- : *hoop - GE- rook(te)
 heap -ed smoke
 (= "heap-smoked")

(iii) Indirect object

(605) *dat die skoorsteen vir die vuur rook
 that the chimney for the fire smokes

-er : *(vir=die=)vuur - rook -ER
 (for the) fire smoke -er

-end : *(vir=die=)vuur - rook -END(e)
 (for the) fire smoke -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)vuur - GE- rook(te)
 (for the) fire -ed smoke
 (= "(for the) fire-smoked")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(606) dat die skoorsteen in die winter rook
 that the chimney in the winter smokes

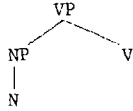
-er : *(in=die=)winter - rook -ER
 (in the) winter smoke -er

-end : ?(in=die=)*winter - rook -END(e)
 (in the) winter smoke -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)winter - GE- rook(te)
 (in the) winter -ed smoke
 (= "(in the) winter-smoked")

c. Structural Adjacency

(i)



(rook is an intransitive verb.)

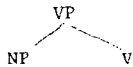
(607) **dat die skoorsteen die lug rook*
 that the chimney the air smokes

-er : **lug - rook -ER*
 air smoke -er

-end : **lug - rook -END(e)*
 air smoke -ing

ge- : **lug - GE- rook(te)*
 air -ed smoke
 (= "air-smoked")

(ii)



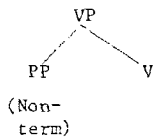
(608) **dat die skoorsteen die blou lug rook*
 that the chimney the blue sky smokes

-er : **blou=lug - rook -ER*
 blue sky smoke -er

-end : **blou=lug - rook -END(e)*
 blue sky smoke -ing

ge- : **blou=lug - GE- rook(te)*
 blue sky -ed smoke
 (= "blue sky-smoked")

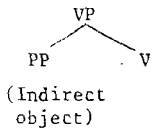
(iii)



(609) *dat die skoorsteen in die winter rook*
 that the chimney in the winter smokes

- er : *(in=die=)winter - rook -ER
 (in the) winter smoke -er
- end : ?(in=die=)*winter - rook -END(e)
 (in the) winter smoke -ing
- ge- : *(in=die=)winter - GE- rook(te)
 (in the) winter -ed smoke
 (= "(in the) winter-smoked")

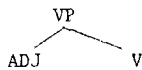
(iv)



(610) **dat die skoorsteen vir die vuur rook*
 that the chimney for the fire smokes

- er : *(vir=die=)vuur - rook -ER
 (for the) fire smoke -er
- end : *(vir=die=)vuur - rook -END(e)
 (for the) fire smoke -ing
- ge- : *(vir=die=)vuur - GE- rook(te)
 (for the) fire -ed smoke
 (= "(for the) fire-smoked")

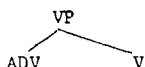
(v)



(611) *dat die vuur die muur swart rook*
 that the fire the wall black smokes

- er : *swart - rook -ER
 black smoke -er
- end : *swart - rook -END(e)
 black smoke -ing
- ge- : *swart - GE- rook(te)
 black -ed smoke
 (= "black-smoked")

(vi)



(612) *dat die skoorsteen baie rook*
 that the chimney a lot smokes

-er : *baie - rook -ER
 a lot smoke -er

-end : *baie - rook -END(e)
 a lot smoke -ing

ge- : *baie - GE- rook(te)
 a lot -ed smoke
 (= "a lot-smoked")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(613) **dat die skoorsteen saam met die vuur rook*
 that the chimney together with the fire smokes

-er : *saam = met =die=vuur - rook -ER
 together with the fire smoke -er

-end : *saam = met =die=vuur - rook -END(e)
 together with the fire smoke -ing

ge- : *saam = met =die=vuur - GE- rook(te)
 together with the fire -ed smoke
 (= "together with the fire-smoked")

(ii) Agent

(614) *dat die skoorsteen rook vir ventilasie*
 that the chimney smokes for ventilation

-er : *skoorsteen - rook -ER
 chimney smoke -er

-end : *skoorsteen - rook -END(e)
 chimney smoke -ing

ge- : *skoorsteen - GE- rook(te)
 chimney -ed smoke
 (= "chimney-smoked")

(iii) Benefactive

(615) **dat die skoorsteen vir die vuur rook*
 that the chimney for the fire smokes

-er : *(vir=die= vuur - rook -ER
 (for the) fire smoke -er

-end : *(vir=die= vuur - rook -END(e)
 (for the) fire smoke -ing

ge- : *(vir=die= vuur - GE- rook(te)
 (for the) fire -ed smoke
 (= "(for the) fire-smoked")

(iv) Duration

(616) *dat die skoorsteen vir 'n uur rook*
 that the chimney for an hour smokes

-er : *(vir= 'n= uur - rook -ER
 (for an) hour smoke -er

-end : *(vir= 'n= uur - rook -END(e)
 (for an) hour smoke -ing

ge- : *(vir= 'n= uur - GE- rook(te)
 (for an) hour -ed smoke
 (= "(for an) hour-smoked")

(v) Goal

(617) *dat die skoorsteen vir ventilasie rook*
 that the chimney for ventilation smokes

-er : *(vir=ventilasie - rook -ER
 (for) ventilation smoke -er

-end : *(vir=ventilasie - rook -END(e)
 (for) ventilation smoke -ing

ge- : *(vir=ventilasie - GE- rook(te)
 (for) ventilation -ed smoke
 (= "(for) ventilation-smoked")

(vi) Instrument

(618) **dat die skoorsteen met rook rook*
 that the chimney with smoke smokes

-er : *(*met =*)*rook - rook -ER*
 (with) smoke smoke -er

-end : *(*met =*)*rook - rook -END(e)*
 (with) smoke smoke -ing

ge- : *(*met =*)*rook - GE- rook(te)*
 (with) smoke -ed smoke
 (= "(with) smoke-smoked")

(vii) Location

(619) ?*dat die skoorsteen in die lug rook*
 that the chimney in the sky smokes

-er : *(*in=die=*)*lug - rook -ER*
 (in the) sky smoke -er

-end : *(*in=die=*)*lug - rook -END(e)*
 (in the) sky smoke -ing

ge- : *(*in=die=*)*lug - GE- rook(te)*
 (in the) sky -ed smoke
 (= "(in the) sky-smoked")

(viii) Modality

(620) *dat die skoorsteen baie rook*
 that the chimney a lot smokes

-er : **baie - rook -ER*
 a lot smoke -er

-end : **baie - rook -END(e)*
 a lot smoke -ing

ge- : **baie - GE- rook(te)*
 a lot -ed smoke
 (= "a lot-smoked")

(ix) Patient

(rook is an intransitive verb.)

(621) *dat die skoorsteen rook rook
that the chimney smoke smokes-er : *rook - rook -ER
smoke smoke -er-end : *rook - rook -END(e)
smoke smoke -ingge- : *rook - GE- rook(te)
smoke -ed smoke
(= "smoke-smoked")(x) Source(622) dat die vuur van die nat hout rook
that the fire from the wet wood smokes-er : *(van =die=)nat=hout - rook -ER
(from the) wet wood smoke -er-end : *(van =die=)nat=hout - rook -END(e)
(from the) wet wood smoke -ingge- : *(van =die=)nat=hout - GE- rook(te)
(from the) wet wood -ed smoke
(= "(from the) wet wood-smoked")(xi) Temporality(623) dat die skoorsteen in die winter rook
that the chimney in the winter smokes-er : *(in=die=)winter - rook -ER
(in the) winter smoke -er-end : ?(in=die=)*winter - rook -END(e)
(in the) winter smoke -ingge- : *(in=die=)winter - GE- rook(te)
(in the) winter -ed smoke
(= "(in the) winter-smoked")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(624) *dat die hout rook*
 that the wood smokes

-er : **hout* - *rook* -ER
 wood smoke -er

-end : **hout* - *rook* -END(e)
 wood smoke -ing

ge- : **hout* - GE- *rook*(te)
 wood -ed smoke
 (= "wood-smoked")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(rook is an intransitive verb.)

(625) **dat die reën die hout rook*
 that the rain the wood smokes

-er : **hout* - *rook* -ER
 wood smoke -er

-end : **hout* - *rook* -END(e)
 wood smoke -ing

ge- : **hout* - GE- *rook*(te)
 wood -ed smoke
 (= "wood-smoked")

2.3 Category III: Optional double object verbs

According to Roeper and Siegel (1978:247), the optional double object verbs are verbs that take an obligatory direct object and an optional indirect object. They (1978:247) distinguish three types of optional double object verbs:

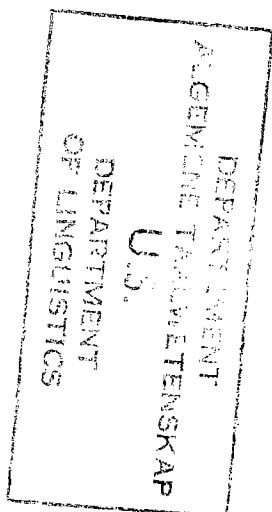
- a. Dative Movement verbs, i.e. verbs which permit Dative Movement (e.g. buy, sell, bring, cut);
- b. non-Dative Movement verbs, i.e. verbs which can take two objects but which do not permit Dative Movement (e.g. elect, envy, allow, con-
sider), and
- c. Complex Dative Movement verbs, i.e. verbs which permit an indirect object without a direct object (e.g. give, recite, read, reach).

According to Roeper and Siegel (1978:249), these verbs fall within the category of zero-morph verbs, because (i) they can appear without any object and (ii) they must have a preposition with a lone indirect object.

In §2.3.1 below four tables are presented which summarize the possible verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of the Dative Movement verbs *skenk* ("give"), *stuur* ("send"), the non-Dative Movement verbs *koop* ("buy") and *vertaal* ("translate"), and the complex Dative Movement verbs *skryf* ("write") and *vertel* ("tell"). In §2.3.2 some conclusions which can be drawn from the tables are presented in the form of a number of generalizations. This is followed by the analyses of the six individual verbs.

2.3.1 Tables

Table (626) below shows the verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of various syntactic categories. Table (627) contains the verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of the different grammatical functions. Table (629) contains the verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of some thematic relations. Table (628) includes the various VP's that are needed to accommodate the base structures of the verbal compounds.



220
SYNTACTIC CATEGORIES

(626)

	Dative Movement verbs		non-Dative Movement verbs		complex Dative Movement verbs	
	skenk "give"	stuur ⁷⁾ "send"	koop "buy"	vertaal ⁸⁾ "translate"	skryf ⁹⁾ "write"	vertel "tell"
N	geld-skenker beker-skenker	?pakkie-stuurder	plaas-koper klere-koper	Eydel-vertaler kinderboek-vertaler	brief-skrywer roman-skrywer	storie-verteller leuen-verteller
	?geld-skenkende ?beker-skenkende		?plaas-kopende ?klere-kopende		?brief-skrywende ?roman-skrywende	?storie-vertellende ?leuen-vertellende
NP						
ADJ						
	nuut-geskenkte	gevries-gestuurde verpak-gestuurde	nuut-gekoopte verwaarloos-gekoopte	ongepubliseer-vertaalde	lank-geskryfde	uitgedink-vertelde
ADV					?netjies-skrywer ?mooi-skrywer	
					?netjies-skrywende ?mooi-skrywende	
					netjies-gekryfde mooi-gekryfde	?graag-vertelde
PP	(aan=die=) *weeshuis- skenker		(?by=die=) *fabriek-koper			
			(?in=) *boetieks-kopende (?by=die=) *fabriek-kopende		(?op=die=) *bord-skrywende (?op=) *mure-skrywende	
	(aan=die=) *weeshuis- geskenkte	(?vir=haar=) *kind- gestuurde	(in=) *boetieks-gekoopte (by=die=) *fabriek-gekoopte	(uit=) *Grieks-vertaalde	(op=die=) *bord-gekryfde (op=) *mure-gekryfde	(?in=die=) *aand- vertelde

(627)

GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS

	Dative Movement verbs		non-Dative Movement verbs		complex Dative Movement verbs	
	<i>skenk</i> "give"	<i>stuur</i> "send"	<i>koop</i> "buy"	<i>vertaal</i> "translate"	<i>skryf</i> "write"	<i>vertel</i> "tell"
Subject						
Direct object	<i>geld-skenker</i> <i>beker-skenker</i> <i>?geld-skenkende</i> <i>?beker-skenkende</i>	<i>?blomme-stuurder</i> <i>?kaartjie-stuurder</i>	<i>plaas-koper</i> <i>klere-koper</i> <i>?plaas-kopende</i> <i>?klere-kopende</i>	<i>Bybel-vertaler</i>	<i>brief-skrywer</i> <i>boek-skrywer</i> <i>?brief-skrywende</i> <i>?boek-skrywende</i>	<i>storie-verteller</i> <i>waarheid-verteller</i> <i>?storie-vertellende</i> <i>?waarheid-vertellende</i>
Indirect object	<i>(?aan=die=) *weeshuis-skenker</i> <i>(?aan=die=) *sportklub-skenker</i> <i>(aan=die=) *weeshuis-geskenkte</i> <i>(aan=die=) *sportklub-geskenkte</i>	<i>(?aan=sy=) *noot-gestuurde</i>	<i>(vir=die=) *baba-gekoopte</i>	<i>(vir=die=) *Chinese-vertaalde</i>	<i>(?vir=) *kinders-skrywer</i> <i>(?vir=) *tydskrifte-skrywer</i> <i>(?vir=) *kinders-skrywende</i> <i>(?vir=) *tydskrifte-skrywende</i>	<i>(?vir=) *kinders-geskryfde</i> <i>(?vir=) *tydskrifte-geskryfde</i> <i>(?vir=die=) *kinders-vertelde</i>
Non-term (PP)	<i>(op=die=) *onthaal-geskenkte</i> <i>(in=die=) *geheim-geskenkte</i>	<i>(?met=) *liefde-gestuurde</i> <i>(?met=die=) *bode-gestuurde</i>	<i>(?by=die=) *fabriek-koper</i> <i>(?by=die=) *fabriek-kopende</i>	<i>(in=) *Afrikaans-vertaalde</i>	<i>(?op=) *papier-skrywende</i>	<i>(op=) *papier-geskryfde</i> <i>(in=die=) *aand-verteld</i>

STRUCTURAL ADJACENCY

(628)

	Dative Movement verbs		non-Dative Movement verbs		complex Dative Movement verbs	
	<i>skenk</i> "give"	<i>stuur</i> "send"	<i>koop</i> "buy"	<i>vertaal</i> "translate"	<i>skryf</i> "write"	<i>vertel</i> "tell"
VP NP N	<i>gela-skenker</i> ----- <i>?gela-skenkende</i>	<i>?kaartjie-stuurder</i>	<i>plaas-koper</i> ----- <i>?plaas-kopende</i>	<i>Eybel-vertaler</i>	<i>roman-skrywer</i> ----- <i>?roman-skrywende</i>	<i>storie-verteller</i> ----- <i>?storie-vertellende</i>
VP NP						
VP PP Non-term)	<i>(op=die=)*onthaal- geskenkte</i>	<i>(?met=)*liefs-gestuurde</i>	<i>(?by=)*fabrieke-koper</i> ----- <i>(?by=)*fabrieke-kopende</i> ----- <i>(by=)*fabrieke-gekoopte</i>	<i>(wit=)*Grieks-vertaalde</i>	<i>(?op=)*mure-skrywende</i> ----- <i>(op=)*mure-geskryfde</i>	
VP PP Indi- rect object)	<i>(?aan=die=)*weeshuis- skenker</i> ----- <i>(aan=die=)*weeshuis- geskenkte</i>	<i>(?vir=haar=)*kind- gestuurde</i>	<i>(vir=die=)*baba-gekoopte</i>	<i>(vir=die=)*studente- vertaalde</i>	<i>(vir=)kinders-skrywer</i> ----- <i>(?vir=)*kinders-skrywende</i> ----- <i>(vir=)*kinders-geskryfde</i>	<i>(?vir=die=)*kinders- vertelde</i>
VP ADJ	<i>nuut-geskenkte</i>	<i>verpak-gestuurde</i>	<i>nuut-gekoopte</i>	<i>ongepubliseer-vertaalde</i>	<i>lank-geskryfde</i>	<i>uitgedink-vertelde</i>
VP ADV					<i>?netjies-skrywer</i> ----- <i>?netjies-skrywende</i> ----- <i>netjies-geskryfde</i>	<i>mooi-vertelde</i>

THEMATIC RELATIONS

(629)

	Dative Movement verbs		non-Dative Movement verbs		complex Dative Movement verbs	
	<i>skenk</i> "give"	<i>stuur</i> "send"	<i>koop</i> "buy"	<i>vertaal</i> "translate"	<i>skryf</i> "write"	<i>vertel</i> "tell"
Accompaniment	<i>?saam=met=die=skool=skryf- geskenkte</i>	<i>?(met=)=faktuur- gestuurde</i>	<i>saam=met=die=langbroek- gekoopte</i>			<i>?saam=met=die=mustek- vertelde</i>
Agent						
Benefactive	<i>(?aan=die=)*sportklub- skenker</i>				<i>(vir=)kinders-skrywer</i>	
	<i>(?aan=die=)*sportklub- geskenkte</i>	<i>(?vir=die=)*soldaat- gestuurde</i>	<i>(vir=sy=)*vrou-gekoopte</i>	<i>(vir=die=)*Chinese- vertaalde</i>	<i>(?vir=)*kinders-skrywende</i>	<i>(?vir=die=)*kinders- vertelde</i>
Duration						
	<i>(?vir=h=)*jaar-geskenkte</i>		<i>?(vir=h=)*jaar-gekoopte</i>			
Goal	<i>(?aan=die=)*universiteit- skenker</i>					
	<i>(?aan=die=)*universiteit- geskenkte</i>	<i>(?vir=sy=)*vrou-gestuurde</i>	<i>(vir=h=)*geskenk- gekoopte</i>	<i>(in=)*Afrikaans-vertaal- de</i>	<i>?(vir=die=)*reël-geskryfde</i>	<i>(?vir=sy=)*preester- vertelde</i>
Instrument		<i>(?met=die=)*pos-gestuurde</i>	<i>(met=)*geld-gekoopte</i>	<i>(?met=h=) rekenaar- vertaalde</i>	<i>(met=h=)*poeëlood- geskryfde</i>	
Location	<i>(?op=die=)*onthaal- geskenkte</i>		<i>(?in=die=)*kafee-gekoopte</i> <i>(?in=die=)*kafee-kopende</i> <i>(in=die=)*kafee-gekoopte</i>		<i>(?op=)*mure-skrywende</i> <i>(op=)*mure-geskryfde</i>	<i>(?in=die=)*hof-vertelde</i>
Modality				<i>uitstekend-vertaalde</i>		
Patient	<i>geld-skenker</i> <i>?geld-skenkende</i>	<i>?bris²-stuurder</i>	<i>plaas-koper</i> <i>?plaas-kopende</i>	<i>Bybel-vertaler</i>	<i>roman-skrywer</i> <i>?roman-skrywende</i>	<i>?graag-vertelde</i> <i>leuen-verteller</i> <i>?leuen-vertellende</i>
Source		<i>(?van=die=)kamp=af-gestuurde</i>	<i>(by=)*Pieter-gekoopte</i>	<i>(uit=)*Grieks-vertaalde</i>		
Temporality			<i>(in=die=)*oggend-gekoopte</i>		<i>(in=die=)*aand-geskryfde</i>	<i>(?in=die=)*aand-vertelde</i>
Theme ₁						
Theme ₂	<i>geld-skenker</i> <i>?geld-skenkende</i>	<i>?pakkie-stuurder</i>	<i>klere-koper</i> <i>?klere-kopende</i>	<i>boek-vertaler</i>	<i>roman-skrywer</i> <i>?roman-skrywende</i>	<i>storie-verteller</i> <i>?storie-vertellende</i>

2.3.2 Generalizations

2.3.2.1 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING THE INCORPORATION OF SYNTACTIC CATEGORIES

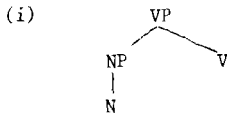
- a. -er and -end Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an optional double object verb and of which the peripheral constituent is a noun.
- b. -er, -end and ge- Affixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an optional double object verb, more specifically a complex Dative Movement verb, and of which the peripheral constituent is an adverb.
- c. -er and -end Suffixation fairly productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an optional double object verb and of which the peripheral constituent is a prepositional phrase.
- d. ge- Prefixation productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an optional double object verb and of which the peripheral constituent is an adjective or a prepositional phrase.

2.3.2.2 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING THE INCORPORATION OF GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS

- a. -er and -end Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an optional double object verb and of which the peripheral constituent is a direct object.
- b. -er and -end Suffixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an optional double object verb, more specifically a Dative Movement or a complex Dative Movement verb, and of which the peripheral constituent is an indirect object.
- c. -er and -end Suffixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an optional double object verb, more specifically a non-Dative Movement or a complex Dative Movement verb, and of which the peripheral constituent is a prepositional phrase.
- d. ge- Prefixation productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an optional double object verb and of which the peripheral constituent is an indirect object or a prepositional phrase.

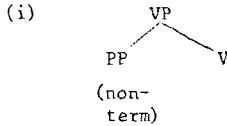
2.3.2.3 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING STRUCTURAL ADJACENCY

- a. -er and -end Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the VP has the following structure:

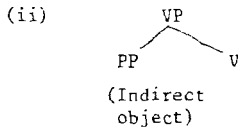


where V is an optional double object verb.

- b. -er and -end Suffixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the VP has either of the following structures:

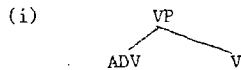


where V is an optional double object verb, more specifically a non-Dative Movement or a complex Dative Movement verb.



where V is an optional double object verb, more specifically a Dative Movement or a complex Dative Movement verb.

- c. -er, -end and ge- Affixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the VP has the following structure:



where V is an optional double object verb, more specifically a complex Dative Movement verb.

- d. ge- Prefixation productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the VP has either of the following structures:



where V is an optional double object verb.

2.3.2.4 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING THE INCORPORATION OF THEMATIC RELATIONS

- a. ge- Prefixation fairly productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an optional double object verb and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating accompaniment, duration, an instrument, a location, modality, source or temporality.
- b. ge- Prefixation productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an optional double object verb and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating a benefactive or a goal.
- c. -er and -end Suffixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an optional double object verb, more specifically a Dative Movement or a complex Dative Movement verb, and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating a benefactive.
- d. -er and -end Suffixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an optional double object verb, more specifically a non-Dative Movement or a complex Dative Movement verb, and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating location.
- e. -er and -end Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an optional double object verb and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating the patient or theme₂.

2.3.2.5 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING STRING ADJACENCY

As will appear from the analyses of the individual verbs in §2.3.3 below, those constituents of the deep structure phrase that constitute the peripheral constituent of the synthetic compound must be adjacent to the verb in the deep structure phrase which will constitute the head of the synthetic compound.

2.3.3 Some verbs2.3.3.1 Dative movement verbs2.3.3.1.1 skenk ("give")

Simple derivations: *skenk* -ER
 give -er
 ?*skenk* -END(e)
 give -ing (= "giving")
 GE- *skenk*(te)
 -ed give (= "given")

a. Syntactic categories(i) Nouns

(630) *dat* *die* *ryk* *man* *geld* *skenk*
 that the wealthy man money gives

-er : *geld* - *skenk* -ER
 money give -er

-end : ?*geld* - *skenk* -END(e)
 money give -ing

ge- : **geld* - GE- *skenk*(te)
 money -ed give
 (= "money-given")

(631) *dat* *die* *komitee* *elke* *jaar* *die beker* *skenk*
 that the committee every year the cup gives

-er : *beker* - *skenk* -ER
 cup give -er

-end : ?*beker* - *skenk* -END(e)
 cup give -ing

ge- : **beker* - GE- *skenk*(te)
 cup -ed give
 (= "cup-given")

(ii) Noun phrases

(632) *dat die ryk man gewoonlik 'n groot bedrag skenk*
 that the wealthy man usually a large amount gives

-er : *groot=bedrag - skenk -ER
 large amount give -er

-end : *groot=bedrag - skenk -END(e)
 large amount give -ing

ge- : *groot=bedrag - GE- skenk(te)
 large amount -ed give
 (= "large amount-given")

(633) *dat die komitee die gesogte trofee skenk*
 that the committee the coveted trophy gives

-er : *gesogte=trofee - skenk -ER
 coveted trophy give -er

-end : *gesogte=trofee - skenk -END(e)
 coveted trophy give -ing

ge- : *gesogte=trofee - GE- skenk(te)
 coveted trophy -ed give
 (= "coveted trophy-given")

(iii) Adjectives

(634) *dat die firma die motor nuut skenk*
 that the firm the car new gives

-er : *nuut - skenk -ER
 new give -er

-end : *nuut - skenk -END(e)
 new give -ing

ge- : nuut - GE- skenk(te)
 new -ed give
 (= "new-given")

(iv) Adverbs

(635) *dat die komitee die beker jaarliks skenk*
 that the committee the cup annually gives

<u>-er</u>	:	*jaarliks - skenk -ER
		annually give -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*jaarliks - skenk -END(e)
		annually give -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*jaarliks - GE- skenk(te)
		annually -ed give
		(= "annually-given")

(iii) Prepositional phrases

(636) *dat die ryk man die geld aan die weeshuis skenk*
 that the wealthy man the money to the orphanage gives

<u>-er</u>	:	(?aan=die=)*weeshuis - skenk -ER
		(to the) orphanage give -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(aan=die=)weeshuis - skenk -END(e)
		(to the) orphanage give -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	(aan=die=)*weeshuis - GE- skenk(te)
		(to the) orphanage -ed give
		(= "(to the) orphanage-given")

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

(637) **dat die man skenk*
 that the man gives

<u>-er</u>	:	*man - skenk -ER
		man give -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*man - skenk -END(e)
		man give -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*man - GE- skenk(te)
		man -ed give
		(= "man-given")

(ii) Direct object

(638) *dat die ryk man die geld skenk*
 that the wealthy man the money gives

-er : *geld* - *skenk* -ER
 money give -er

-end : ?*geld* - *skenk* -END(e)
 money give -ing

ge- : **geld* - GE- *skenk*(te)
 money -ed give
 (= "money-given")

(639) *dat die komitee die beker skenk*
 that the committee the cup gives

-er : *beker* - *skenk* -ER
 cup give -er

-end : ?*beker* - *skenk* -END(e)
 cup give -ing

ge- : **beker* - GE- *skenk*(te)
 cup -ed give
 (= "cup-given")

Since *skenk* is a DM-verb (i.e. a verb that triggers the Dative Movement transformation), one would expect it to be possible to incorporate the direct object of construction (640), for example in a verbal compound with *skenk* as head constituent:

(640) *dat die ryk man die weeshuis geld skenk*
 that the wealthy man the orphanage money gives

(641) *dat die ryk man geld aan die weeshuis skenk*
 that the wealthy man money to the orphanage gives

In (640) the Dative Movement transformation has moved the prepositional object of (641) to the direct object position. Thus, *die weeshuis* ('the orphanage') is the direct object of the verb *skenk* in (640) above. The verbal compound formed by incorporating the direct object of (640), will be **weeshuis-skenker* ('orphanage giver') which is not acceptable in Afrikaans.

A similar result is obtained when we observe the following set of sentences:

(642) *dat die komitee die beker skenk*
 that the committee the cup gives

Verbal compound: *beker-skenker*
 cup give -er

- (643) *dat die komitee die beker aan die sportklub skenk*
 that the committee the cup to the sportsclub gives

The application of Dative Movement in (643) results in sentence (644):

- (644) *dat die komitee die sportklub die beker skenk*
 that the committee the sportsclub the cup gives

The verbal compound which is formed by incorporating the direct object is **sportklub-skenker* ("sportsclub giver").

These facts show that items appearing in the direct object position as a result of the application of the Dative Movement transformation, cannot be incorporated into verbal compounds with *skenk* as head constituent.

This phenomenon could be attributed to the fact that another constituent, viz. *geld* ("money") in (640) and *die beker* ("the cup") in (644), separates the direct object and the verb. As was observed in §2.3.2.5 above, only constituents which are both structurally adjacent and string adjacent can be incorporated into a verbal compound.

(iii) Indirect object

- (645) *dat die ryk man geld aan die weeshuis skenk*
 that the wealthy man money to the orphanage gives

-er : (?*aan=die=*)**weeshuis* - *skenk* -ER
 (to the) orphanage give -er

-end : *(*aan=die=*)**weeshuis* - *skenk* -END(e)
 (to the) orphanage give -ing

ge- : (*aan=die=*)**weeshuis* - GE- *skenk*(te)
 (to the) orphanage -ed give
 (= "(to the) orphanage-given")

- (646) *dat die komitee die beker aan die sportklub skenk*
 that the committee the cup to the sportsclub gives

-er : (?*aan=die=*)**sportklub* - *skenk* -ER
 (to the) sportsclub give -er

-end : *(*aan=die=*)**sportklub* - *skenk* -END(e)
 (to the) sportsclub give -ing

ge- : (*aan=die=*)**sportklub* - GE- *skenk*(te)
 (to the) sportsclub -ed give
 (= "(to the) sportsclub-given")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(647) *dat die man die geld op die onthaal skenk*
 that the man the money at the party gives

-er : *(*op=die=*)*onthaal* - *skenk* -ER
 (at the) party give -er

-end : *(*op=die=*)*onthaal* - *skenk* -END(e)
 (at the) party give -ing

ge- : (*op=die=*)**onthaal* - GE- *skenk*(te)
 (at the) party -ed give
 (= "(at the) party-given")

(648) *dat die komitee die beker in die geheim skenk*
 that the committee the cup in the secret gives

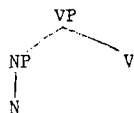
-er : *(*in=die=*)*geheim* - *skenk* -ER
 (in the) secret give -er

-end : *(*in=die=*)*geheim* - *skenk* -END(e)
 (in the) secret give -ing

ge- : (*in=die=*)**geheim* - GE- *skenk*(te)
 (in the) secret -ed give
 (= "(in the) secret-given")

c. Structural Adjacency

(i)



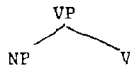
(649) *dat die ryk man die geld skenk*
 that the wealthy man the money gives

-er : *geld* - *skenk* -ER
 money give -er

-end : ?*geld* - *skenk* -END(e)
 money give -ing

ge- : **geld* - GE- *skenk*(te)
 money -ed give
 (= "money-given")

(ii)



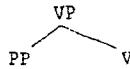
(650) *dat die komitee die gesogte beker skenk*
 that the committee the coveted cup gives

-er : **gesogte=beker* - *skenk* -ER
 coveted cup give -er

-end : **gesogte=beker* - *skenk* -END(e)
 coveted cup give -ing

ge- : **gesogte=beker* - GE- *skenk(te)*
 coveted cup -ed give
 (= "coveted cup-given")

(iii)



(Non-term)

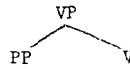
(451) *dat die firma die geld op die onthaal skenk*
 that the firm the money at the party gives

-er : *(*op=die=*)*onthaal* - *skenk* -ER
 (at the) party give -er

-end : *(*op=die=*)*onthaal* - *skenk* -END(e)
 (at the) party give -ing

ge- : (*op=die=*)**onthaal* - GE- *skenk(te)*
 (at the) party -ed give
 (= "(at the) party-given")

(iv)



(Indirect object)

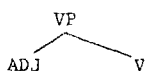
(652) *dat die man die geld aan die weeshuis skenk*
 that the man the money to the orphanage gives

-er : (?*aan=die=*)**weeshuis* - *skenk* -ER
 (to the) orphanage give -er

-end : *(aan-die-)weeshuis - skenk -END(e)
 (to the) orphanage give -ing

ge- : (aan-die-)*weeshuis - GE- skenk(te)
 (to the) orphanage -ed give
 (= "(to the) orphanage-given")

(v)



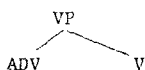
(653) dat die komitee die beker nuut skenk
 that the committee the cup new gives

-er : *nuut - skenk -ER
 new give -er

-end : *nuut - skenk -END(e)
 new give -ing

ge- : nuut - GE- skenk(te)
 new -ed give
 (= "new-given")

(vi)



(654) dat Jan die geld jaarliks skenk
 that Jan the money annually gives

-er : *jaarliks - skenk -ER
 annually give -er

-end : *jaarliks - skenk -END(e)
 annually give -ing

ge- : *jaarliks - GE- skenk(te)
 annually -ed give
 (= "annually-given")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(655) dat die man die geld saam met die skildery skenk
 that the man the money together with the painting gives

- er : *saam = met =die=skildery - skenk -ER
together with the painting give -er
- end : *saam = met =die=skildery - skenk -END(e)
together with the painting give -ing
- ge- : ?saam = met =die=skildery - GE- skenk(te)
together with the painting -ed give
(= "together with the painting-given")

(ii) Agent

- (656) dat die komitee die beker skenk
that the committee the cup gives

- er : *komitee - skenk -ER
committee give -er
- end : *komitee - skenk -END(e)
committee give -ing
- ge- : *komitee - GE- skenk(te)
committee -ed give
(= "committee-given")

(iii) Benefactive

- (657) dat die komitee die beker aan die sportklub skenk
that the committee the cup to the sportsclub gives

- er : (?aan=die=)sportklub - skenk -ER
(to the) sportsclub give -er
- end : *(aan=die=)sportklub - skenk -END(e)
(to the) sportsclub give -ing
- ge- : (aan=die=)sportklub - GE- skenk(te)
(to the) sportsclub -ed give
(= "(to the) sportsclub-given")

(iv) Duration

- (658) dat die komitee die beker vir 'n jaar skenk
that the committee the cup for a year gives

- er : *(vir='n)jaar - skenk -ER
(for a) year give -er

- end : *(vir=h=)jaar - skenk -END(e)
(for a) year give -ing
- ge- : (?vir=h=)*jaar - GE- skenk(te)
(for a) year -ed give
(= "(for a) year-given")

(v) Goal

- (659) *dat die digter sy notas aan die universiteit skenk*
that the poet his notes to the university gives

- er : ?(aan=die=)*universiteit - skenk -ER
(to the) university give -er
- end : *(aan=die=)universiteit - skenk -END(e)
(to the) university give -ing
- ge- : (aan=die=)*universiteit - GE- skenk(te)
(to the) university -ed give
(= "(to the) university-given")

(vi) Instrument

- (660) *dat Jan die geld per tjek skenk*
that Jan the money per cheque gives

- er : *(per=)tjek - skenk -ER
(per) cheque give -er
- end : *(per=)tjek - skenk -END(e)
(per) cheque give -ing
- ge- : *(per=)tjek - GE- skenk(te)
(per) cheque -ed give
(= "(per) cheque-given")

(vii) Location

- (661) *dat die firma die geld op die onthaal skenk*
that the firm the money at the party gives

- er : *(op=die=)onthaal - skenk -ER
(at the) party give -er
- end : *(op=die=)onthaal - skenk -END(e)
(at the) party give -ing

ge- : (op=die=)*onthaal - GE- skenk(te)
 (at the) party -ed give
 (= "(at the) party-given")

(viii) Modality

(662) ?dat die man gereeld skenk aan die universiteit
 that the man regularly gives to the university

-er : *gereeld - skenk -ER
 regularly give -er

-end : *gereeld - skenk -END(e)
 regularly give -ing

ge- : *gereeld - GE- skenk(te)
 regularly -ed give
 (= "regularly-given")

(ix) Patient

(663) dat die man die geld skenk
 that the man the money gives

-er : geld - skenk -ER
 money give -er

-end : ?geld - skenk -END(e)
 money give -ing

ge- : *geld - GE- skenk(te)
 money -ed give
 (= "money-given")

(x) Source

(664) dat Jan 'n skildery uit sy versameling skenk
 that Jan a painting from his collection gives

-er : *(uit=sy=)versameling - skenk -ER
 (from his) collection give -er

-end : *(uit=sy=)versameling - skenk -END(e)
 (from his) collection give -ing

ge- : *(uit=sy=)versameling - GE- skenk(te)
 (from his) collection -ed give
 (= "(from his) collection-given")

(xi) Temporality

(665) *dat hy die geld in die aand skenk*
 that he the money in the evening gives

-er : **(in-die=)aand - skenk -ER*
 (in the) evening give -er

-end : **(in-die=)aand - skenk -END(e)*
 (in the) evening give -ing

ge- : **(in-die=)aand - GE- skenk(te)*
 (in the) evening -ed give
 (= "(in the) evening-given")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(*skenk* is a transitive verb.)

(666) **dat die man skenk*
 that the man gives

-er : **man - skenk -ER*
 man give -er

-end : **man - skenk -END(e)*
 man give -ing

ge- : **man - GE- skenk(te)*
 man -ed give
 (= "man-given")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(667) *dat die ryk man geld skenk*
 that the wealthy man money gives

-er : *geld - skenk -ER*
 money give -er

-end : **geld - skenk -END(e)*
 money give -ing

ge- : **geld - GE- skenk(te)*
 money -ed give
 (= "money-given")

2.3.3.1.2 stuur ("send")

Simple derivations:	<i>stuur</i>	-(d)ER	
	send	-er	(= "sender")
	<i>stuur</i>	-END(e)	
	send	-ing	(= "sending")
	GE-	<i>stuur</i> (de)	
	-ed	send	(= "sent")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(668) *dat die apteek die pakkie stuur*
 that the chemist the parcel sends

-er : *pakkie - *stuur* -(d)ER
 parcel send -er

-end : *pakkie - *stuur* -END(e)
 parcel send -ing

ge- : *pakkie - GE- *stuur*(de)
 parcel -ed send
 (= "parcel-sent")

(ii) Noun phrases

(669) *dat die soldaat n lang brief stuur*
 that the soldier a long letter sends

-er : *lang= brief - *stuur* -(d)ER
 long letter send -er

-end : *lang= brief - *stuur* -END(e)
 long letter send -ing

ge- : *lang= brief - GE- *stuur*(de)
 long letter -ed send
 (= "long letter-sent")

(iii) Adjectives

(670) *dat sy pa altyd die vleis gevries stuur*
 that his father always the meat frozen sends

<u>-er</u>	:	*gevries - stuur -(d)ER frozen send -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*gevries - stuur -END(e) frozen send -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	gevries - GE- stuur(de) frozen -ed send (= "frozen-sent")

(671) dat hy die appels verpak stuur
that he the apples packed sends

<u>-er</u>	:	*verpak - stuur -(d)ER packed send -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*verpak - stuur -END(e) packed send -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	verpak - GE- stuur(de) packed -ed send (= "packed-sent")

(iv) Adverbs

(672) dat die apteek die pakkie gou stuur
that the chemist the parcel promptly sends

<u>-er</u>	:	*gou - stuur -(d)ER promptly send -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*gou - stuur -END(e) promptly send -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*gou - GE- stuur(de) promptly -ed send (= promptly-sent")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(673) dat sy die pakkie vir haar kind stuur
that she the parcel for her child sends

<u>-er</u>	:	*(vir=haar=)kind - stuur -(d)ER (for her) child send -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(vir=haar=)kind - stuur -END(e) (for her) child send -ing

ge- : (?vir=haar=)*kind - GE- stuur(de)
 (for her) child -ed send
 (= "(for her) child-sent")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(stuur is a verb which obligatorily takes a direct object.)

(674) *dat die apteek stuur
 that the chemist sends

-er : *apteeK - stuur -(d)ER
 chemist send -er

-end : *apteeK - stuur -END(e)
 chemist send -ing

ge- : *apteeK - GE- stuur(de)
 chemist -ed send
 (= "chemist-sent")

(ii) Direct object

(675) dat die man blomme stuur
 that the man flowers sends

-er : ?blomme - stuur -(d)ER
 flowers send -er

-end : *blomme - stuur -END(e)
 flowers send -ing

ge- : *blomme - GE- stuur(de)
 flowers -ed send
 (= "flowers-sent")

(676) dat ouma altyd 'n kaartjie stuur
 that grandmother always a card sends

-er : ?kaartjie - stuur -(d)ER
 card send -er

<u>-end</u>	:	*kaartjie - stuur -END(e)
		card send -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*kaartjie - GE- stuur(de)
		card -ed send
		(= "card-sent")

Since *stuur* is a verb which triggers the Dative Movement transformation, one would expect it to be possible to incorporate the direct object of (677) below in a verbal compound with *stuur* as head constituent:

(677) *dat die man sy nooi 'n ruiker stuur*
 that the man his girlfriend a bouquet sends

(678) *dat die man 'n ruiker aan sy nooi stuur*
 that the man a bouquet to his girlfriend sends

In (677) the Dative Movement transformation has moved the prepositional object of (678), viz. *aan sy nooi*, into the direct object position. Thus, *sy nooi* is the direct object of the verb *stuur* in (677). The verbal compound formed by incorporating the direct object of (677), will be **nooi-stuurder*, which is unacceptable in Afrikaans. Just as in the case of *skenk* (compare p. 230), it seems that items which appear in the direct object position as a result of the application of the Dative Movement transformation, cannot be incorporated in verbal compounds with *stuur* as head constituent.

(iii) Indirect object

(679) *dat die man 'n ruiker aan sy nooi stuur*
 that the man a bouquet to his girlfriend sends

-er : *(aan=sy)=nooi - stuur -(d)ER
 (to his) girlfriend send -er

-end : *(aan=sy)=nooi - stuur -END(e)
 (to his) girlfriend send -ing

ge- : ?(aan=sy)*nooi - GE- stuur(de)
 (to his) girlfriend -ed send
 (= "(to his) girlfriend-sent")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(680) *dat Jan die blomme met liefde stuur*
 that Jan the flowers with love sends

-er : *(met=)liefde - stuur -(d)ER
 (with) love send -er

-end : *(met=)liefde - stuur -END(e)
 (with) love send -ing

ge- : (?met=)*liefde - GE- stuur(de)
 (with) love -ed send
 (= "(with) love-sent")

(681) *dat die winkel die pakkie met die bode stuur*
 that the shop the parcel with the messenger sends

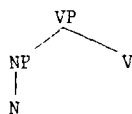
-er : *(met=die=)bode - stuur -(d)ER
 (with the) messenger send -er

-end : *(met=die=)bode - stuur -END(e)
 (with the) messenger send -ing

ge- : (?met=die=)*bode - GE- stuur(de)
 (with the) messenger -ed send
 (= "(with the) messenger-sent")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



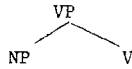
(682) *dat ouma 'n kaartjie stuur*
 that grandma a card sends

-er : *kaartjie - stuur -(d)ER
 card send -er

-end : *kaartjie - stuur -END(e)
 card send -ing

ge- : *kaartjie - GE- stuur(de)
 card -ed send
 (= "card-sent")

(ii)



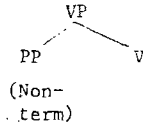
(683) *dat die soldaat 'n lang brief stuur*
 that the soldier a long letter sends

-er : *lang=brief - stuur -(d)ER
 long letter send -er

-end : *lang=brief - stuur -END(e)
 long letter send -ing

ge- : *lang=brief - GE- stuur(de)
 long letter -ed send
 (= "long letter-sent")

(iii)



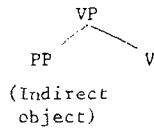
(684) *dat Jan die blomme met liefde stuur*
 that Jan the flowers with love sends

-er : *(met =)liefde - stuur -(d)ER
 (with) love send -er

-end : *(met =)liefde - stuur -END(e)
 (with) love send -ing

ge- : (?met=)*liefde - GE- stuur(de)
 (with) love -ed send
 (= "(with) love-sent")

(iv)



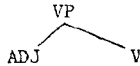
(685) *dat ouma 'n kaartjie vir haar kind stuur*
 that grandma a card for her child sends

-er : *(vir=haar=)kind - stuur -(d)ER
 (for her) child send -er

-end : *(vir=haar=)kind - stuur -END(e)
 (for her) child send -ing

ge- : (?vir=haar=)*kind - GE- stuur(de)
 (for her) child -ed send
 (= "(for her) child-sent")

(v)



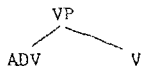
(686) *dat hulle altyd die vrugte verpak stuur*
 that they always the fruit packed send

-er : *verpak - stuur -(d)ER
 packed send -er

-end : *verpak - stuur -END(e)
 packed send -ing

ge- : verpak - GE- stuur(de)
 packed -ed send
 (= "packed-sent")

(vi)



(687) *dat die apteek die pakkie gou stuur*
 that the chemist the parcel promptly sends

-er : *gou - stuur -(d)ER
 promptly send -er

-end : *gou - stuur -END(e)
 promptly send -ing

ge- : *gou - GE- stuur(de)
 promptly -ed send
 (= "promptly-sent")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(688) *dat hulle die pakkie saam met 'n faktuur stuur*
 that they the parcel together with an invoice send

- er : *(met= h=)faktuur - stuur -(d)ER
(with an) invoice send -er
- end : *(met= h=)faktuur - stuur -END(e)
(with an) invoice send -ing
- ge- : ?(met= h=)faktuur - GE- stuur(de)
(with an) invoice -ed send
(= "(with an) invoice-sent")

(ii) Agent

- (689) *dat die student die blomme vir sy meisie stuur*
that the student the flowers for his girlfriend sends

- er : *student + stuur -(d)ER
student send -er
- end : *student - stuur -END(e)
student send -ing
- ge- : *student - GE- stuur(de)
student -ed send
(= "student-sent")

(iii) Benefactive

- (690) *dat die vrou die pakkie vir die soldaat stuur*
that the woman the parcel for the soldier sends

- er : *(vir=die=soldaat) - stuur -(d)ER
(for the) soldier send -er
- end : *(vir=die=soldaat) - stuur -END(e)
(for the) soldier send -ing
- ge- : (?vir=die=)*soldaat - GE- stuur(de)
(for the) soldier -ed send
(= "(for the) soldier-sent")

(iv) Duration

- (691) *dat die firma die waarskuwingsbrief vir 'n maand*
that the firm the reminder (to pay) for a month
lank stuur
long sends

<u>-er</u>	:	*vir=h=maand=lank - stuur	-(d)ER
		for a month long send	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	*vir=h=maand=lank - stuur	-END(e)
		for a month long send	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*vir=h=maand=lank - GE-	stuur(de)
		for a month long -ed send	
		(= "for a month long-sent")	

(v) Goal

(692) dat die man 'n ruiker vir sy vrou stuur
that the man a bouquet for his wife sends

<u>-er</u>	:	*(vir=sy =)vrou - stuur	-(d)ER
		(for his) wife send	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(vir=sy =)vrou - stuur	-END(e)
		(for his) wife send	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	(?vir=sy=)*vrou - GE-	stuur(de)
		(for his) wife -ed send	
		(= "(for his) wife-sent")	

(vi) Instrument

(693) dat sy die pakkie met die pos stuur
that she the parcel with the mail sends

<u>-er</u>	:	*(met=die=)pos - stuur	-(d)ER
		(with the) mail send	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(met=die=)pos - stuur	-END(e)
		(with the) mail send	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	(?met=die=)*pos - GE-	stuur(de)
		(with the) mail -ed send	
		(= "(with the) mail-sent")	

(vii) Location

(694) dat 'n mens 'n brief in 'n koevert stuur
that a one a letter in an envelope sends

<u>-er</u>	:	*(in=h=)koevert - stuur	-(d)ER
		(in an) envelope send	-er

- end : *(in= h=)koevert - stuur -END(e)
(in an) envelope send -ing
- ge- : *(in= h=)koevert - GE- stuur(de)
(in an) envelope -cd send
(= "(in an) envelope-sent")

(viii) Modality

- (695) *dat die winkel die pakkie gou stuur*
that the shop the parcel promptly sends

- er : *gou - stuur -(d)ER
promptly send -er
- end : *gou - stuur -END(e)
promptly send -ing
- ge- : *gou - GE- stuur(de)
promptly -ed send
(= "promptly-sent")

(ix) Patient

- (696) *dat die soldaat gereeld 'n brief stuur*
that the soldier regularly a letter sends

- er : ?brief - stuur -(d)ER
letter send -er
- end : *brief - stuur -END(e)
letter send -ing
- ge- : *brief - GE- stuur(de)
letter -ed send
(= "letter-sent")

(x) Source

- (697) *dat die soldaat 'n brief van die kamp af stuur*
that the soldier a letter from the camp sends

- er : *(van =die=)kamp=af stuur -(d)ER
(from the) camp send -er
- end : *(van =die=)kamp=af stuur -END(e)
(from the) camp send -ing

ge- : ?(van=die=)*kamp=af - GE- stuur(de)
 (from the) camp -ed send
 (= "(from the) camp-sent")

(xi) Temporality

(698) *dat die poskantoor briewe daaglik* stuur
 that the post-office letters daily sends

-er : *daaglik - stuur -(d)ER
 daily send -er

-end : *daaglik - stuur -END(e)
 daily send -ing

ge- : *daaglik - GE- stuur(de)
 daily -ed send
 (= "daily-sent")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(699) **dat die apteek* stuur
 that the chemist sends

-er : *apteek - stuur -(d)ER
 chemist send -er

-end : *apteek - stuur -END(e)
 chemist send -ing

ge- : *apteek - GE- stuur(de)
 chemist -ed send
 (= "chemist-sent")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(700) *dat die winkel die pakkie* stuur
 that the shop the parcel sends

-er : ?pakkie - stuur -(d)ER
 parcel send -er

-end : *pakkie - stuur -END(e)
 parcel send -ing

ge- : *pakkie - GE- stuur(de)
 parcel -ed send
 (= "parcel-sent")

2.3.3.2 Non-Dative Movement verbs

2.3.3.2.1 koop ("buy")

Simple derivations:	<i>koop</i>	-ER	
	buy	-er	(= "buyer")
	<i>koop</i>	-END(e)	
	buy	-ing	(= "buying")
	GE-	<i>koop</i> (te)	
	-ed	buy	(= "bought")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(701) *dat die boer 'n plaas koop*
 that the farmer a farm buys

-er : *plaas - koop -ER*
 farm buy -er

-end : *?plaas - koop -END(e)*
 farm buy -ing

ge- : **plaas - GE- koop(te)*
 farm -ed buy
 (= "farm-bought")

(702) *dat Susan klere koop*
 that Susan clothes buys

-er : *klere - koop -ER*
 clothes buy -er

-end : *?klere - koop -END(e)*
 clothes buy -ing

ge- : **klere - GE- koop(te)*
 clothes -ed buy
 (= "clothes-bought")

(ii) Noun phrases

(703) *dat sy gewoonlik duur klere koop*
 that she usually expensive clothes buys

- er : *duur = klere - koop -ER
expensive clothes buy -er
- end : *duur = klere - koop -END(e)
expensive clothes buy -ing
- ge- : *duur = klere - GE- koop(te)
expensive clothes -ed buy
(= "expensive clothes-bought")

(iii) Adjectives

- (704) dat die oom die motor nuut koop
that the man the car new buys

- er : *nuut - koop -ER
new buy -er
- end : *nuut - koop -END(e)
new buy -ing
- ge- : nuut - GE- koop(te)
new -ed buy
(= "new-bought")

- (705) dat Jan die plaas verwaarloos koop
that Jan the farm neglected buys

- er : *verwaarloos - koop -ER
neglected buy -er
- end : *verwaarloos - koop -END(e)
neglected buy -ing
- ge- : verwaarloos - GE- koop(te)
neglected -ed buy
(= "neglected-bought")

(iv) Adverbs

- (706) dat ons die koerant gereeld koop
that we the paper regularly buy

- er : *gereeld - koop -ER
regularly buy -er
- end : *gereeld - koop -END(e)
regularly buy -ing

ge- : *gereeld - GE- koop(te)
regularly -ed buy
(= "regularly-bought")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(707) *dat Marie al haar klere in boetiëks koop*
that Marie all her clothes at boutiques buys

-er : *(in=)boetiëks - koop -ER
(at) boutiques buy -er

-end : (?in=)*boetiëks - koop -END(e)
(at) boutiques buy -ing

ge- : (in=)*boetiëks - GE- koop(te)
(at) boutiques -ed buy
(= "(at) boutiques-bought")

(708) *dat sy die stoële by die fabriek koop*
that she the chairs at the factory buys

-er : ?(by=die=)*fabriek - koop -ER
(at the) factory buy -er

-end : ?(by=die=)*fabriek - koop -END(e)
(at the) factory buy -ing

ge- : (by=die=)*fabriek - GE- koop(te)
(at the) factory -ed bought
(= "(at the) factory-bought")

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

(709) *dat *die oom koop*
that the man buys

-er : *oom - koop -ER
man buy -er

-end : *oom - koop -END(e)
man buy -ing

ge- : *oom - GE- koop(te)
man -ed buy
(= "man-bought")

(ii) Direct object

(710) *dat Mnr. Jones n plaas koop*
 that Mr Jones a farm buys

-er : *plaas - koop -ER*
 farm buy -er

-end : *?plaas - koop -END(e)*
 farm buy -ing

ge- : **plaas - GE- koop(te)*
 farm -ed buy
 (= "farm-bought")

(711) *dat Marie klere koop*
 that Marie clothes buys

-er : *klere - koop -ER*
 clothes buy -er

-end : *?klere - koop -END(e)*
 clothes buy -ing

ge- : **klere - GE- koop(te)*
 clothes -ed buy
 (= "clothes-bought")

(iii) Indirect object

(712) *dat Jane n beertjie vir die baba koop*
 that Jane a teddy-bear for the baby buys

-er : **(vir=die=)baba - koop -ER*
 (for the) baby buy -er

-end : **(vir=die=)baba - koop -END(e)*
 (for the) baby buy -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)*baba - GE- koop(te)*
 (for the) baby -ed buy
 (= "(for the) baby-bought")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(713) *dat hy die skoene by die fabriek koop*
 that he the shoes at the factory buys

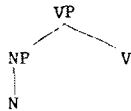
-er : ?(by=die=)*fabriek - koop -ER
 (at the) factory buy -er

-end : ?(by=die=)*fabriek - koop -END(e)
 (at the) factory buy -ing

ge- : (by=die=)*fabriek - GE- koop(te)
 (at the) factory -ed buy
 (= "(at the) factory-bought")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



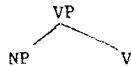
(714) dat Mnr. Jones 'n plaas koop
 that Mr Jones a farm buys

-er : plaas - koop -ER
 farm buy -er

-end : ?plaas - koop -END(e)
 farm buy -ing

ge- : *plaas - GE- koop(te)
 farm -ed buy
 (= "farm-bought")

(ii)



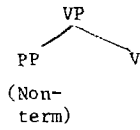
(715) dat die oom 'n groot motor koop
 that the man a big car buys

-er : *groot=motor - koop -ER
 big car buy -er

-end : *groot=motor - koop -END(e)
 big car buy -ing

ge- : *groot=motor - GE- koop(te)
 big car -ed buy
 (= "big car-bought")

(iii)



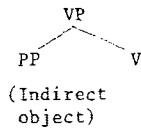
(716) *dat Susan al haar klere by fabriekes koop*
 that Susan all her clothes at factories buys

-er : ?(by=)*fabriekes - koop -ER
 (at) factories buy -er

-end : ?(by=)*fabriekes - koop -END(e)
 (at) factories buy -ing

ge- : (by=)*fabriekes - GE- koop(te)
 (at) factories -ed buy
 (= "(at) factories-bought")

(iv)



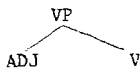
(717) *dat Jan 'n beertjie vir die baba koop*
 that Jan a teddy-bear for the baby buys

-er : *(vir=die=)baba - koop -ER
 (for the) baby buy -er

-end : *(vir=die=)baba - koop -END(e)
 (for the) baby buy -ing

ge- : (vir=die=)*baba - GE- koop(te)
 (for the) baby -ed buy
 (= "(for the) baby-bought")

(v)



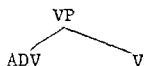
(718) *dat die oom die motor nuut koop*
 that the man the car new buys

-er : *nuut - koop -ER
 new buy -er

-end : *nuut - koop -END(e)
 new buy -ing

ge- : nuut - GE- koop(te)
 new -ed buy
 (= "new-bought")

(vi)



(719) dat n mens die kruie hier koop
 that one the herbs here buys

-er : *hier - koop -ER
 here buy -er

-end : *hier - koop -END(e)
 here buy -ing

ge- : *hier - GE- koop(te)
 here -ed buy
 (= "here-bought")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(720) dat sy die trui saam met die langbroek koop
 that she the jersey together with the slacks buys

-er : *saam = met =die=langbroek - koop -ER
 together with the slacks buy -er

-end : *saam = met =die=langbroek - koop -END(e)
 together with the slacks buy -ing

ge- : saam = met =die=langbroek - GE- koop(te)
 together with the slacks -ed buy
 (= "together with the slacks-bought")

(ii) Agent

(721) dat die com die motor koop om vir sy vrou te gee
 that the man the car buys to for his wife give

<u>-er</u>	:	*oom - koop -ER man buy -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*oom - koop -END(e) man buy -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*oom - GE- koop(te) man -ed buy (= "man-bought")

(iii) Benefactive

(722) *dat die oom die motor vir sy vrou koop*
that the man the car for his wife buys

<u>-er</u>	:	*(vir=sy)vrou - koop -ER (for his) wife buy -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(vir=sy)vrou - koop -END(e) (for his) wife buy -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	(vir=sy)*vrou - GE- koop(te) (for his) wife -ed buy (= "(for his) wife-bought")

(iv) Duration

(723) *dat ons die tydskrif vir 'n jaar lank koop*
that we the magazine for a year long buy

<u>-er</u>	:	*(vir=h=)jaar - koop -ER (for a) year buy -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(vir=h=)jaar - koop -END(e) (for a) year buy -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	?(vir=h=)*jaar - GE- koop(te) (for a) year -ed buy (= "(for a) year-bought")

(v) Goal

(724) *dat die oom die motor vir 'n geskenk koop*
that the man the car for a present buys

<u>-er</u>	:	*(vir=h=)geskenk - koop -ER (for a) present buy -er
------------	---	--

- end : *(vir=h)geskenk - koop -END(e)
 (for a) present .buy -ing
- ge- : (vir=h)*geskenk - GE- koop(te)
 (for a) present -ed buy
 (= "(for a) present-bought")

(vi) Instrument

- (725) dat h mens goed met geld koop
 that a one things with money buys

- er : *(met =)geld ~ koop -ER
 (with) money buy -er
- end : *(met =)geld ~ koop -END(e)
 (with) money buy -ing
- ge- : (met =)*geld ~ GE- koop(te)
 (with) money -ed buy
 (= "(with) money-bought")

(vii) Location

- (726) dat hy die lekkers in die kafee koop
 that he the sweets at the cafe buys

- er : (?in=die)*kafee ~ koop -ER
 (at the) cafe buy -er
- end : (?in=die)*kafee ~ koop -END(e)
 (at the) cafe buy -ing
- ge- : (in=die)*kafee - GE- koop(te)
 (at the) cafe -ed buy
 (= "(at the) cafe-bought")

(viii) Modality

- (727) dat ons hierdie tydskrif gereeld koop
 that we this magazine regularly buy

- er : *gereeld - koop -ER
 regularly buy -er
- end : *gereeld - koop -END(e)
 regularly buy -ing

ge- : *gereeld - GE- koop(te)
 regularly -ed buy
 (= "regularly-bought")

(ix) Patient

(728) *dat* *Mnr. Jones* *h plaas* *koop*
 that Mr. Jones a farm buys

-er : *plaas - koop -ER*
 farm buy -er

-end : ?*plaas - koop -END(e)*
 farm buy -ing

ge- : **plaas - GE- koop(te)*
 farm -ed buy
 (= "farm-bought")

(x) Source

(729) *dat* *Jan* *die boek* *by Pieter* *koop*
 that Jan the book from Pieter buys

-er : *(*by =*)*Pieter - koop -ER*
 (from) Pieter buy -er

-end : *(*by =*)*Pieter - koop -END(e)*
 (from) Pieter buy -ing

ge- : (*by =*)**Pieter - GE- koop(te)*
 (from) Pieter -ed buy
 (= "(from) Pieter-bought")

(xi) Temporality

(730) *dat* *hy altyd* *die koerant* *in die oggend* *koop*
 that he always the paper in the morning buys

-er : *(*in=die=*)*oggend - koop -ER*
 (in the) morning buy -er

-end : *(*in=die=*)*oggend - koop -END(e)*
 (in the) morning buy -ing

ge- : (*in=die=*)**oggend - GE- koop(te)*
 (in the) morning -ed buy
 (= "(in the) morning-bought")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(731) *dat die oom koop
 that the man buys

-er : *oom - koop -ER
 man buy -er

-end : *oom - koop -END(e)
 man buy -ing

ge- : *oom - GE- koop(te)
 man -ed buy
 (= "man-bought")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verbs)

(732) dat Marie klere koop
 that Marie clothes buys

-er : *klere - koop -ER
 clothes buy -er

-end : *klere - koop -END(e)
 clothes buy -ing

ge- : *klere - GE- koop(te)
 clothes -ed buy
 (= "clothes-bought")

2.3.3.2.2 vertaal ("translate")

Simple derivations: vertaal -ER (= "translator")
 translate -er
vertaal -END(e) (= "translating")
 translate -ing
 GE- vertaal(de) (= "translated")
 -ed translate

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(733) dat hulle die Bybel vertaal
 that they the Bible translate

- er : Bybel - vertaal -ER
Bible translate -er
- end : *Bybel - vertaal -END(e)
Bible translate -ing
- ge- : *Bybel - vertaal(de)
Bible -ed translate
(= "Bible-translated")

(734) dat Rosa kinderboeke vertaal
that Rosa children's books translates

- er : kinderboek - vertaal -ER
children's books translate -er
- end : *kinderboek - vertaal -END(e)
children's books translate -ing
- ge- : *kinderboek - vertaal(de)
children's books -ed translate
(= "children's books-translated")

(ii) Noun phrases

(735) dat Jan die nuwe boek vertaal
that Jan the new book translates

- er : *nuwe=boek - vertaal -ER
new book translate -er
- end : *nuwe=boek - vertaal -END(e)
new book translate -ing
- ge- : *nuwe=boek - vertaal(de)
new book -ed translate
(= "new book-translated")

(iii) Adjectives

(736) dat Jan die boek nog ongepubliseer vertaal
that Jan the book as yet unpublished translates

- er : *ongepubliseer - vertaal -ER
unpublished translate -er
- end : *ongepubliseer - vertaal -END(e)
unpublished translate -ing

ge- : ongepubliseer - vertaal(de)
 unpublished -ed translate
 (= "unpublished-translated")

(iv) Adverbs

(737) *dat hulle die Bybel nou vertaal*
 that they the Bible now translate

-er : *nou - vertaal -ER
 now translate -er

-end : *nou - vertaal -END(e)
 now translate -ing

ge- : *nou - vertaal(de)
 now -ed translate
 (= "now-translated")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(738) *dat die vertalers die Bybel uit Grieks vertaal*
 that the translators the Bible from Greek translate

-er : *(uit =)Grieks - vertaal -ER
 (from) Greek translate -er

-end : *(uit =)Grieks - vertaal -END(e)
 (from) Greek translate -ing

ge- : (uit =)*Grieks - vertaal(de)
 (from) Greek -ed translate
 (= "(from) Greek-translated")

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

(739) **dat Marie vertaal*
 that Marie translates

-er : *Marie - vertaal -ER
 Marie translate -er

-end : *Marie - vertaal -END(e)
 Marie translate -ing

ge- : **Marie* - *vertaal(de)*
Marie -ed translate
 (= "Marie-translated")

(ii) Direct object

(740) *dat hulle die Bybel vertaal*
 that they the Bible translate

-er : *Bybel* - *vertaal* -ER
 Bible translate -er

-end : **Bybel* - *vertaal* -END(e)
 Bible translate -ing

ge- : **Bybel* - *vertaal(de)*
 Bible -ed translate
 (= "Bible-translated")

(iii) Indirect object

(741) *dat hulle die Bybel vir die Chinese vertaal*
 that they the Bible for the Chinese translate

-er : *(*vir=die=*)*Chinese* - *vertaal* -ER
 (for the) Chinese translate -er

-end : *(*vir=die=*)*Chinese* - *vertaal* -END(e)
 (for the) Chinese translate -ing

ge- : (*vir=die=*)**Chinese* - *vertaal(de)*
 (for the) Chinese -ed translate
 (= "(for the) Chinese-translated")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(742) *dat Jan die boek in Afrikaans vertaal*
 that Jan the book into Afrikaans translates

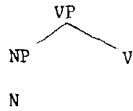
-er : *(*in =*)*Afrikaans* - *vertaal* -ER
 (into) Afrikaans translate -er

-end : *(*in =*)*Afrikaans* - *vertaal* -END(e)
 (into) Afrikaans translate -ing

ge- : (*in =*)**Afrikaans* - *vertaal(de)*
 (into) Afrikaans -ed translate
 (= "(into) Afrikaans-translated")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



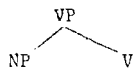
(743) *dat die komitee die Bybel vertaal*
 that the committee the Bible translates

-er : *Bybel - vertaal -ER*
 Bible translate -er

-end : **Bybel - vertaal -END(e)*
 Bible translate -ing

ge- : **Bybel - vertaal(de)*
 Bible -ed translate
 (= "Bible-translated")

(ii)



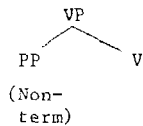
(744) *dat Jan die nuwe boek vertaal*
 that Jan the new book translates

-er : **nuwe=boek - vertaal -ER*
 new book translate -er

-end : **nuwe=boek - vertaal -END(e)*
 new book translate -ing

ge- : **nuwe=boek - vertaal(de)*
 new book -ed translate
 (= "new book-translated")

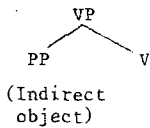
(iii)



(745) *dat hulle die Bybel uit Grieks vertaal*
 that they the Bible from Greek translate

- er : *(uit =)Grieks - vertaal -ER
(from) Greek translate -er
- end : *(uit =)Grieks - vertaal -END(e)
(from) Greek translate -ing
- ge- : (uit =)*Grieks - vertaal(de)
(from) Greek -ed translate
(= "(from) Greek-translated")

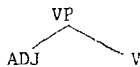
(iv)



- (746) *dat hy die boek vir die studente vertaal*
that he the book for the students translates

- er : *(vir=die=)studente - vertaal -ER
(for the) students translate -er
- end : *(vir=die=)studente - vertaal -END(e)
(for the) students translate -ing
- ge- : (vir=die=)*studente - vertaal(de)
(for the) students -ed translate
(= "(for the) students-translated")

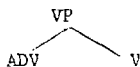
(v)



- (747) *dat Jan die boek nog ongepubliseer vertaal*
that Jan the book as yet unpublished translates

- er : *ongepubliseer - vertaal -ER
unpublished translate -er
- end : *ongepubliseer - vertaal -END(e)
unpublished translate -ing
- ge- : ongepubliseer - vertaal(de)
unpublished -ed translate
(= "unpublished-translated")

(vi)



(748) *dat hulle die boek nou vertaal*
 that they the book now translate

-er : **nou - vertaal -ER*
 now translate -er

-end : **nou - vertaal -END(e)*
 now translate -ing

ge- : **nou - vertaal(de)*
 now -ed translate
 (= "now-translated")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(749) *dat Marie die boek saam met die artikel*
 that Marie the book together with the article

vertaal
 translates

-er : **saam = met -die-artikel - vertaal -ER*
 together with the article translate -er

-end : **saam = met -die-artikel - vertaal -END(e)*
 together with the article translate -ing

ge- : **saam = met -die-artikel - vertaal(de)*
 together with the article -ed translate
 (= "together with the article-translated")

(ii) Agent

(750) *dat die komitee die Bybel vir die sendelinge*
 that the committee the Bible for the missionaries

vertaal
 translates

-er : **komitee - vertaal -ER*
 committee translate -er

-end : **komitee - vertaal -END(e)*
 committee translate -ing

ge- : **komitee - vertaal(de)*
 committee -ed translate
 (= "committee-translated")

(iii) Benefactive

(751) *dat hulle die Bybel vir die Chinese vertaal*
 that they the Bible for the Chinese translate

-er : *(vir=die=)Chinese - vertaal -ER
 (for the) Chinese translate -er

-end : *(vir=die=)Chinese - vertaal -END(e)
 (for the) Chinese translate -ing

ge- : (vir=die=)*Chinese - vertaal(de)
 (for the) Chinese -ed translate
 (= "(for the) Chinese-translated")

(iv) Duration

(752) **dat hy 'n halfuur lank vertaal*
 that he half an hour long translates

-er : **n* = halfuur = lank - vertaal -ER
 half an hour long translate -er

-end : **n* = halfuur = lank - vertaal -END(e)
 half an hour long translate -ing

ge- : **n* = halfuur = lank - vertaal(de)
 half an hour long -ed translate
 (= "half an hour long-translated")

(v) Goal

(753) *dat sy die boek in Afrikaans vertaal*
 that she the book into Afrikaans translates

-er : *(in =)Afrikaans - vertaal -ER
 (into) Afrikaans translate -er

-end : *(in =)Afrikaans - vertaal -END(e)
 (into) Afrikaans translate -ing

ge- : (in =)*Afrikaans - vertaal(de)
 (into) Afrikaans -ed translate
 (= "(into) Afrikaans-translated")

(vi) Instrument

- (754) *dat hulle met 'n rekenaar vertaal*
 that they with a computer translate
- er : *(met =n=)rekenaar - vertaal -ER
 (with a) computer translate -er
- end : *(met =n=)rekenaar - vertaal -END(e)
 (with a) computer translate -ing
- ge- : (?met =n=) rekenaar - vertaal(de)
 (with a) computer -ed translate
 (= "(with a) computer-translated")

(vii) Location

- (755) *dat hy die boek in sy kantoor vertaal*
 that he the book in his office translates
- er : *(in=sy =)kantoor - vertaal -ER
 (in his) office translate -er
- end : *(in=sy =)kantoor - vertaal -END(e)
 (in his) office translate -ing
- ge- : *(in=sy =)kantoor - vertaal(de)
 (in his) office -ed translate
 (= "(in his) office-translated")

(viii) Modality

- (756) *dat sy die boek uitstekend vertaal*
 that she the book excellently translates
- er : *uitstekend - vertaal -ER
 excellently translate -er
- end : *uitstekend - vertaal -END(e)
 excellently translate -ing
- ge- : uitstekend - vertaal(de)
 excellently -ed translate
 (= "excellently-translated")

(ix) Patient

(757) *dat hulle die Bybel vertaal*
 that they the Bible translate

-er : *Bybel - vertaal -ER*
 Bible translate -er

-end : **Bybel - vertaal -END(e)*
 Bible translate -ing

ge- : **Bybel - vertaal(de)*
 Bible -ed translate
 (= "Bible-translated")

(x) Source

(758) *dat hulle die Bybel uit Grieks vertaal*
 that they the Bible from Greek translate

-er : **(uit=)Grieks - vertaal -ER*
 (from) Greek translate -er

-end : **(uit=)Grieks - vertaal -END(e)*
 (from) Greek translate -ing

ge- : *(uit=)*Grieks - vertaal(de)*
 (from) Greek -ed translate
 (= "(from) Greek-translated")

(xi) Temporality

(759) *dat sy net in die oggend vertaal*
 that she only in the morning translates

-er : **(in=die=)oggend - vertaal -ER*
 (in the) morning translate -er

-end : **(in=die=)oggend - vertaal -END(e)*
 (in the) morning translate -ing

ge- : **(in=die=)oggend - vertaal(de)*
 (in the) morning -ed translate
 (= "(in the) morning-translated")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(760) *dat Jan vertaal
 that Jan translates

-er : *Jan - vertaal -ER
 Jan translate -er

-end : *Jan - vertaal -END(e)
 Jan translate -ing

ge- : *Jan - vertaal(de)
 Jan -ed translate
 (= "Jan-translated")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(761) dat sy n boek vertaal
 that she a book translates

-er : boek - vertaal -ER
 book translate -er

-end : *boek - vertaal -END(e)
 book translate -ing

ge- : *boek - vertaal(de)
 book -ed translate
 (= "book-translated")

2.3.3.3 Complex Dative Movement verbs

2.3.3.3.1 skryf ("write")

Simple derivations: skryf -ER (= "writer")
 write -er
 skryf -END(e) (= "writing")
 write -ing
 GE- skryf(de) (= "written")
 -ed write

a. Syntactic categories(i) Nouns

(762) *dat die soldaat 'n brief skryf*
 that the soldier a letter writes

-er : *brief - skryf -ER*
 letter write -er

-end : **brief - skryf -END(e)*
 letter write -ing

ge- : **brief - GE- skryf(de)*
 letter -ed write
 (= "letter-written")

(763) *dat Pieter 'n roman skryf*
 that Pieter a novel writes

-er : *roman - skryf -ER*
 novel write -er

-end : **roman - skryf -END(e)*
 novel write -ing

ge- : **roman - GE- skryf(de)*
 novel -ed write
 (= "novel-written")

(ii) Noun phrases

(764) *dat die kêrel 'n lang brief skryf*
 that the boy a long letter writes

-er : **lang=brief - skryf -ER*
 long letter write -er

-end : **lang=brief - skryf -END(e)*
 long letter write -ing

ge- : **lang=brief - GE- skryf(de)*
 long letter -ed write
 (= "long letter-written")

(iii) Adjectives

(765) *dat Pieter opstelle lank skryf*
 that Pieter essays long writes

-er : *lank - skryf -ER
 long write -er

-end : *lank - skryf -END(e)
 long write -ing

ge- : lank - GE- skryf(de)
 long -ed write
 (= "long-written")

(iv) Adverbs

(766) *dat Susan netjies skryf*
 that Susan neatly writes

-er : ?netjies - skryf -ER
 neatly write -er

-end : ?netjies - skryf -END(e)
 neatly write -ing

ge- : netjies - GE- skryf(de)
 neatly -ed write
 (= "neatly-written")

(767) *dat die kind mooi skryf*
 that the child beautifully writes

-er : ?mooi - skryf -ER
 beautifully write -er

-end : ?mooi - skryf -END(e)
 beautifully write -ing

ge- : mooi - GE- skryf(de)
 beautifully -ed write
 (= "beautifully-written")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(768) *dat die onderwyser op die bord skryf*
 that the teacher on the blackboard writes

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>(op=die=)</i> bord	-	skryf	-ER
		(on the)		blackboard	write -er
<u>-end</u>	:	? <i>(op=die=)</i> *bord	-	skryf	-END(e)
		(on the)		blackboard	write -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	<i>(op=die=)</i> *bord	-	GE- skryf	(de)
		(on the)		blackboard	-ed write
		(= "(on the) blackboard-written")			

(769) *dat gekke slagspreuke op mure skryf*
 that fools graffiti on walls write

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>(op=)</i> mure	-	skryf	-ER
		(on)		walls	write -er
<u>-end</u>	:	? <i>(op=)</i> *mure	-	skryf	-END(e)
		(on)		walls	write -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	<i>(op=)</i> *mure	-	GE- skryf	(de)
		(on)		walls	-ed write
		(= "(on) walls-written")			

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(770) *dat die kind skryf*
 that the child writes

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>kind</i>	-	skryf	-ER
		child		write	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>kind</i>	-	skryf	-END(e)
		child		write	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>kind</i>	-	GE- skryf	(de)
		child		-ed write	
		(= "child-written")			

(ii) Direct object

(771) *dat Jan 'n brief skryf*
 that Jan a letter writes

<u>-er</u>	:	<i>brief</i>	-	skryf	-ER
		letter		write	-er

-end : ?*brief* - skryf -END(e)
letter write -ing

ge- : **brief* - GE- skryf(de)
letter -ed write
(= "letter-written")

(772) *dat die dosent 'n boek skryf*
that the lecturer a book writes

-er : *boek* - skryf -ER
book write -er

-end : ?*boek* - skryf -END(e)
book write -ing

ge- : **boek* - GE- skryf(de)
book -ed write
(= "book-written")

(iii) Indirect object

(773) *dat sy vir kinders skryf*
that she for children writes

-er : (?*vir*=) *kinders* - skryf -ER
(for) children write -er

-end : ?(*vir*=) **kinders* - skryf -END(e)
(for) children write -ing

ge- : (*vir*=) **kinders* - GE- skryf(de)
(for) children -ed write
(= "(for) children-written")

(774) *dat hy verhale vir tydskrifte skryf*
that he stories for magazines writes

-er : (?*vir*=) *tydskrifte* - skryf -ER
(for) magazines write -er

-end : ?(*vir*=) **tydskrifte* - skryf -END(e)
(for) magazines write -ing

ge- : (*vir*=) **tydskrifte* - GE- skryf(de)
(for) magazines -ed write
(= "(for) magazines-written")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(775) *dat 'n mens gewoonlik op papier skryf*
 that a one usually on paper writes

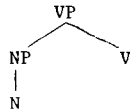
-er : *(op=)papier - skryf -ER
 (on) paper write -er

-end : ?(op=)*papier - skryf -END(e)
 (on) paper write -ing

ge- : (op=)*papier - GE- skryf(de)
 (on) paper -ed write

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



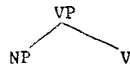
(776) *dat Marie 'n roman skryf*
 that Marie a novel writes

-er : roman - skryf -ER
 novel write -er

-end : ?roman - skryf -END(e)
 novel write -ing

ge- : *roman - GE- skryf(de)
 novel -ed write
 (= "novel-written")

(ii)



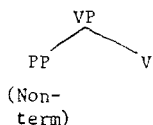
(777) *dat die soldaat 'n lang brief skryf*
 that the soldier a long letter writes

-er : *lang=brief - skryf -ER
 long letter write -er

-end : *lang=brief - skryf -END(e)
 long letter write -ing

ge- : **lang=brief* - GE- skryf(*de*)
 long letter -ed write
 (= "long letter-written")

(iii)



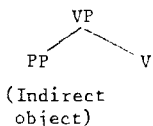
(778) *dat gekke op mure skryf*
 that fools on walls write

-er : *(*op=*)*mure* - skryf -ER
 (on) walls write -er.

-end : ?(*op=*)**mure* - skryf -END(*e*)
 (on) walls write -ing

ge- : (*op=*)**mure* - GE- skryf(*de*)
 (on) walls -ed write
 (= "(on) walls-written")

(iv)



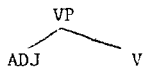
(779) *dat sy boeke vir kinders skryf*
 that she books for children writes

-er : (*vir=*)*kinders* - skryf -ER
 (for) children write -er

-end : ?(*vir=*)**kinders* - skryf -END(*e*)
 (for) children write -ing

ge- : (*vir=*)**kinders* - GE- skryf(*de*)
 (for) children -ed write
 (= "(for) children-written")

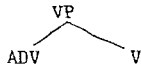
(v)



(780) *dat Pieter opstelle lank skryf*
 that Pieter essays long writes

- er : *lank - skryf -ER
 long write -er
- end : *lank - skryf -END(e)
 long write -ing
- ge- : lank - GE- skryf(de)
 long -ed write
 (= "long-written")

(vi)



- (781) *dat die kind netjies skryf*
 that the child neatly writes

- er : ?netjies - skryf -ER
 neatly write -er
- end : ?netjies - skryf -END(e)
 neatly write -ing
- ge- : netjies - GE- skryf(de)
 neatly -ed write
 (= "neatly-written")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

- (782) *dat Pieter die opstel saam met sy maat skryf*
 that Pieter the essay together with his friend writes

- er : *saam = met =sy =maat - skryf -ER
 together with his friend write -er
- end : *saam = met =sy =maat - skryf -END(e)
 together with his friend write -ing
- ge- : *saam = met =sy =maat - GE- skryf(de)
 together with his friend -ed write
 (= "together with his friend-written")

(ii) Agent

- (783) *dat die soldaat 'n brief vir sy meisie skryf*
 that the soldier a letter for his girlfriend writes

<u>-er</u>	:	*soldaat - skryf -ER soldier write -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*soldaat - skryf -END(e) soldier write -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*solċaat - GE- skryf(de) soldier -ed write (= "soldier-written")

(iii) Benefactive

(784) *dat Marie boeke vir kinders skryf*
that Marie books for children writes

<u>-er</u>	:	(vir=)kinders - skryf -ER (for) children write -er
<u>-end</u>	:	?(vir=)*kinders - skryf -END(e) (for) children write -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	(vir=)*kinders - GE- skryf(de) (for) children -ed write (= "(for) children-written")

(iv) Duration

(785) *dat die studente in die eksamen vir 'n uur skryf*
that the students in the exams for an hour write

<u>-er</u>	:	*(vir= 'n)=uur - skryf -ER (for an) hour write -er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(vir= 'n)=uur - skryf -END(e) (for an) hour write -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(vir= 'n)=uur - GE- skryf(de) (for an) hour -ed write (= "(for an) hour-written")

(v) Goal

(786) *dat Jan verhaale vir die geld skryf*
that Jan stories for the money writes

<u>-er</u>	:	*(vir=die)=geld - skryf -ER (for the) money write -er
------------	---	--

-end : *(vir=die=)geld - skryf -END(e)
 (for the) money write -ing

ge- : ?(vir=die=)*geld - GE- skryf(de)
 (for the) money -ed write
 (= "(for the) money-written")

(vi) Instrument

(787) *dat die kind met 'n potlood skryf*
 that the child with a pencil writes

-er : *(met 'n=)potlood - skryf -ER
 (with a) pencil write -er

-end : *(met 'n=)potlood - skryf -END(e)
 (with a) pencil write -ing

ge- : (met 'n=)potlood - GE- skryf(de)
 (with a) pencil -ed write
 (= "(with a) pencil-written")

(vii) Location

(788) *dat gekke op mure skryf*
 that fools on walls write

-er : *(op=)mure - skryf -ER
 (on) walls write -er

-end : ?(op=)*mure - skryf -END(e)
 (on) walls write -ing

ge- : (op=)*mure - GE- skryf(de)
 (on) walls -ed write
 (= "(on) walls-written")

(viii) Modality

(789) *dat die soldaat gereeld skryf*
 that the soldier regularly writes

-er : *gereeld - skryf -ER
 regularly write -er

-end : *gereeld - skryf -END(e)
 regularly write -ing

ge- : *gereeld - GE- skryf(de)
regularly -ed write
(= "regularly-written")

(ix) Patient

(790) *dat Pieter 'n roman skryf*
that Pieter a novel writes

-er : roman - skryf -ER
novel write -er

-end : ?roman - skryf -END(e)
novel write -ing

ge- : *roman - GE- skryf(de)
novel -ed write
(= "novel-written")

(x) Source

(791) *dat hy oor sy kinderjare skryf*
that he about his childhood years writes

-er : *(oor = sy =)kinderjare - skryf -ER
(about his) childhood years write -er

-end : *(oor = sy =)kinderjare - skryf -END(e)
(about his) childhood years write -ing

ge- : *(oor = sy =)kinderjare - GE- skryf(de)
(about his) childhood years -ed write
(= "(about his) childhood years-written")

(xi) Temporality

(792) *dat die soldaat in die aand skryf*
that the soldier in the evening writes

-er : *(in=die=)aand - skryf -ER
(in the) evening write -er

-end : *(in=die=)aand - skryf -END(e)
(in the) evening write -ing

ge- : (in=die=)*aand - GE- skryf(de)
(in the) evening -ed write
(= "(in the) evening-written")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(793) *dat Piet skryf*
 that Piet writes

-er : *Piet - skryf -ER
 Piet write -er

-end : *Piet - skryf -END(e)
 Piet write -ing

ge- : *Piet - GE- skryf
 Piet -ed write
 (= "Piet-written")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(794) *dat Pieter 'n roman skryf*
 that Pieter a novel writes

-er : roman - skryf -ER
 novel write -er

-end : roman - skryf -END(e)
 novel write -ing

ge- : roman - GE- skryf(de)
 novel -ed write
 (= "novel-written")

2.3.3.3.2 vertel ("tell")

Simple derivations: *vertel* -ER
 tell -er (= "teller")
vertel -END(e)
 tell -ing (= "telling")
*vertel(de)*⁸⁾
 -ed tell (= "told")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(795) *dat oupa 'n storie vertel*
 that grandpa a story tells

-er : *storie - vertel* -ER
 story tell -er

-end : ?*storie - vertel* -END(e)
 story tell -ing

ge- : **storie - vertel(de)*
 storie -ed tell
 (= "story-told")

(796) *dat alle mense soms 'n leuen vertel*
 that all people sometimes a lie tell

-er : *leuen - vertel* -ER
 lie tell -er

-end : ?*leuen - vertel* -END(e)
 lie tell -ing

ge- : **leuen - vertel(de)*
 lie -ed tell
 (= "lie-told")

(ii) Noun phrases

(797) *dat oupa 'n mooi storie vertel*
 that grandfather a pretty tale tells

-er : **mooi = storie - vertel* -ER
 pretty tale tell -er

-end : **mooi = storie - vertel* -END(e)
 pretty tale tell -ing

ge- : **mooi = storie - vertel(de)*
 pretty tale -ed tell
 (= "pretty tale-told")

(iii) Adjectives

(798) ?*dat oupa sy stories uitgedink vertel*
 that grandfather his stories (well) thought out tells

-er : **uitgedink - vertel* -ER
 thought out tell -er

-end : **uitgedink - vertel* -END(e)
 thought out tell -ing

ge- : *uitgedink - vertel(de)*
 thought out -ed tell
 (= "thought out-told")

(iv) Adverbs

(799) *dat oupa graag vertel van sy kinderjare*
 that grandfather willingly tells of his childhood years

-er : **graag - vertel -ER*
 willingly tell -er

-end : **graag - vertel -END(e)*
 willingly tell -ing

ge- : ?*graag - vertel(de)*
 willingly -ed tell
 (= "willingly-told")

(vi) Prepositional phrases

(800) *dat oupa die spookstories in die aand*
 that grandfather the ghost stories in the evening

vertel
 tells

-er : *(*in=die=*)*aand - vertel -ER*
 (in the) evening tell -er

-end : *(*in=die=*)*aand - vertel -END(e)*
 (in the) evening tell -ing

ge- : ?(*in=die=*)**aand - vertel(de)*
 (in the) evening -ed tell
 (= "(in the) evening-told")

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

(801) *dat oupa vertel*
 that grandfather tells

-er : **oupa - vertel -ER*
 grandfather tell -er

-end : *oupa - vertel -END(e)
grandfather tell -ing

ge- : *oupa - vertel(de)
grandfather -ed tell
(= "grandfather-told")

(ii) Direct object

(802) dat oupa 'n storie vertel
that grandfather a story tells

-er : storie - vertel -ER
story tell -er

-end : ?storie - vertel -END(e)
story tell -ing

ge- : *storie - vertel(de)
story -ed tell
(= "story-told")

(803) dat Jan altyd die waarheid vertel
that Jan always the truth tells

-er : waarheid - vertel -ER
truth tell -er

-end : ?waarheid - vertel -END(e)
truth tell -ing

ge- : *waarheid - vertel(de)
truth -ed tell
(= "truth-told")

(iii) Indirect object

(804) dat oupa stories vir die kinders vertel
that grandfather stories for the children tells

-er : *(vir=dis=)kinders - vertel -ER
(for the) children tell -er

-end : *(vir=die=)kinders - vertel -END(e)
(for the) children tell -ing

ge- : ?(vir=die=)*kinders - vertel(de)
(for the) children -ed tell
(= "(for the) children-told")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(805) *dat oupa spookstories in die aand vertel*
 that grandfather ghost stories in the evening tells

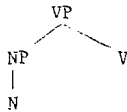
-er : *(in-die-)aand - vertel -ER
 (in the) evening tell -er

-end : *(in-die-)aand - vertel -END(e)
 (in the) evening tell -ing

ge- : (in-die-)*aand - vertel(de)
 (in the) evening -ed tell
 (= "(in the) evening-told")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



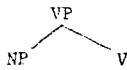
(806) *dat oupa 'n storie vertel*
 that grandfather a story tells

-er : storie - vertel -ER
 story tell -er

-end : ?storie - vertel -END(e)
 story tell -ing

ge- : *storie - vertel(de)
 story -ed tell
 (= "story-told")

(ii)



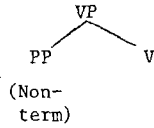
(807) *dat oupa 'n mooi storie vertel*
 that grandfather a pretty story tells

-er : *mooi = storie - vertel -ER
 pretty story tell -er

-end : *mooi = storie - vertel -END(e)
 pretty story tell -ing

ge- : *mooi = storie - vertel(de)
 pretty story -ed tell
 (= "pretty story-told")

(iii)



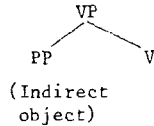
(808) dat oupa stories om die vuur vertel
 that grandfather stories by the fireside tells

-er : *(om=die=)vuur - vertel -ER
 (by the) fireside tell -er

-end : *(om=die=)vuur - vertel -END(e)
 (by the) fireside tell -ing

ge- : *(om=die=)vuur - vertel(de)
 (by the) fireside -ed tell
 (= "(by the) fireside-told")

(iv)



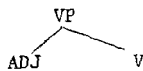
(809) dat oupa 'n storie vir die kinders vertel
 that grandfather a story for the children tells

-er : *(vir=die=)kinders - vertel -ER
 (for the) children tell -er

-end : *(vir=die=)kinders - vertel -END(e)
 (for the) children tell -ing

ge- : ?(vir=die=)*kinders - vertel(de)
 (for the) children -ed tell
 (= "(for the) children-told")

(v)



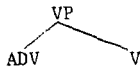
(810) ?dat oupa die stories uitgedink vertel
 that grandfather the stories (well) thought out tells

-er : **uitgedink* - *vertel* -ER
 (well) thought out tell -er

-end : **uitgedink* - *vertel* -END(e)
 (well) thought out tell -ing

ge- : *uitgedink* - *vertel(de)*
 (well) thought out -ed tell
 (= "(well) thought out-told")

(vi)



(811) *dat oupa die stories mooi vertel*
 that grandfather the stories beautifully tells

-er : **mooi* - *vertel* -ER
 beautifully tell -er

-end : **mooi* - *vertel* -END(e)
 beautifully tell -ing

ge- : *mooi* - *vertel(de)*
 beautifully -ed tell
 (= "beautifully-told")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(812) *dat hy die storie saam met die musiek*
 that he the story in company with the music

vertel
 tells

-er : **saam = met = die=musiek* - *vertel* -ER
 in company with the music tell -er

-end : **saam = met = die=musiek* - *vertel* -END(e)
 in company with the music tell -ing

ge- : ?*saam = met = die=musiek* - *vertel(de)*
 in company with the music -ed tell
 (= "in company with the music-told")

(ii) Agent

(813) *dat oupa stories vir sy kleinkinders vertel*
 that grandfather stories for his grandchildren tells

-er : *oupa - vertel -ER
 grandfather tell -er

-end : *oupa - vertel -END(e)
 grandfather tell -ing

ge- : *oupa - vertel(de)
 grandfather -ed tell
 (= "grandfather-told")

(iii) Benefactive

(814) *dat oupa stories vir die kinders vertel*
 that grandfather stories for the children tells

-er : *(vir=die=)kinders - vertel -ER
 (for the) children tell -er

-end : *(vir=die=)kinders - vertel -END(e)
 (for the) children tell -ing

ge- : ?(vir=die=)kinders - vertel(de)
 (for the) children -ed tell
 (= "(for the) children-told")

(iv) Duration

(815) *dat hy n halfuur (lank) stories vertel*
 that he half an hour (long) stories tells

-er : *halfuur - vertel -ER
 half an hour tell -er

-end : *halfuur - vertel -END(e)
 half an hour tell -ing

ge- : *halfuur - vertel(de)
 half an hour -ed tell
 (= "half an hour-told")

(v) Goal

(816) *dat oupa stories vir sy plesier vertel*
 that grandfather stories for his (own) pleasure tells

-er : *(vir=sy =) plesier - vertel -ER
 (for his) (own) pleasure tell -er

-end : *(vir=sy =) plesier - vertel -END(e)
 (for his) (own) pleasure tell -ing

ge- : ?(vir=sy =) *plesier - vertel(de)
 (for his) (own) pleasure -ed tell
 (= "(for his) (own) pleasure-told")

(vi) Instrument

(817) *?dat hy stories met gebare vertel*
 that he stories with gestures tells

-er : *(met =)gebare - vertel -ER
 (with) gestures tell -er

-end : *(met =)gebare - vertel -END(e)
 (with) gestures tell -ing

ge- : *(met =)gebare - vertel(de)
 (with) gestures -ed tell
 (= "(with) gestures-told")

(vii) Location

(818) *dat Jan leuens in die hof vertel*
 that Jan lies in the court tells

-er : *(in=die=)hof - vertel -ER
 (in the) court tell -er

-end : *(in=die=)hof - vertel -END(e)
 (in the) court tell -ing

ge- : ?(in=die=)hof - vertel(de)
 (in the) court -ed tell
 (= "(in the) court-told")

(viii) Modality

(819) *dat die oom sy jagstories graag vertel*
 that the man his hunting stories willingly tells

-er : **graag - vertel -ER*
 willingly tell -er

-end : **graag - vertel -END(e)*
 willingly tell -ing

ge- : ?*graag - vertel(de)*
 willingly -ed tell
 (= "willingly-told")

(ix) Patient

(820) *dat Jan 'n leuen vertel*
 that Jan a lie tells

-er : *leuen - vertel -ER*
 lie tell -er

-end : ?*leuen - vertel -END(e)*
 lie tell -ing

ge- : **leuen - vertel(de)*
 lie -ed tell
 (= "lie-told")

(x) Source

(821) *dat die oom van sy jagtogte vertel*
 that the man of his hunting trips tells

-er : **(van=sy =)jagtogte - vertel -ER*
 (of his) hunting trips tell -er

-end : **(van=sy =)jagtogte - vertel -END(e)*
 (of his) hunting trips tell -ing

ge- : **(van=sy =)jagtogte - vertel(de)*
 (of his) hunting trips -ed tell
 (= "(of his) hunting trips-told")

(xi) Temporality

(822) *dat oupa gewoonlik spookstories in die*
 that grandfather usually ghost stories in the

aand vertel
 evening tells

-er : *(in=die=)aand - vertel -ER
 (in the) evening tell -er

-end : *(in=die=)aand - vertel -END(e)
 (in the) evening tell -ing

ge- : ?(in=die=)*aand - vertel(de)
 (in the) evening -ed tell
 (= "(in the) evening-told")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(823) **dat Jan vertel*
 that Jan tells

-er : *Jan - vertel -ER
 Jan tell -er

-end : *Jan - vertel -END(e)
 Jan tell -ing

ge- : *Jan - vertel(de)
 Jan -ed tell
 (= "Jan-told")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(824) *dat oupa 'n storie vertel*
 that grandfather a story tells

-er : storie - vertel -ER
 story tell -er

-end : ?storie - vertel -END(e)
 story tell -ing

ge- : *storie - vertel(de)
 story -ed tell
 (= "story-told")

2.4 Category IV: Obligatory transitive verbs with one object

According to Bach (1974:106), a transitive verb is a verb which has one or two complements. Akmajian and Heny (1975:53) regard transitive verbs as verbs "that require objects". They illustrate this point as follows:

- (825) "For example, the verb admire is transitive, and hence sentences such as *John admired are ungrammatical, while sentences such as John admired the car are good."

In this paragraph, we are concerned with transitive verbs which take an obligatory direct object. As in the case of the previous verbs, four tables are given in §2.4.1 below. These tables summarize the possible verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of the verbs *besit* ("own"), *besoek* ("visit"), *breek* ("break"), *dra* ("carry"), *jaag* ("chase"), *ken* ("know"), *maak* ("make") and *rook* ("smoke"). In §2.4.2 a number of generalizations are formulated. These generalizations represent some of the conclusions that may be drawn from the tables in §2.4.1. This is followed by the analyses of the eight individual verbs.

2.4.1 Tables

Table (826) below presents the verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of various syntactic categories. Table (827) contains the verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of the different grammatical functions. Table (829) contains the verbal compounds formed by the incorporation of some thematic relations. Table (828) includes various VP's that are needed to accommodate the base structures of the verbal compounds.

SYNTACTIC CATEGORIES

(826)

	<i>besit</i> "own"	<i>besoek</i> "visit"	<i>breek</i> "break"	<i>dra</i> "wear"	<i>jaag</i> "chase"	<i>ken</i> "know"	<i>maak</i> "make"	<i>rook</i> "smoke"
N	<i>grond-besitter</i> <i>huis-besitter</i>	<i>museum-besoeker</i> <i>?pasiënt-besoeker</i>	<i>klip-breker</i> <i>?bord-breker</i>	<i>das-draer</i>	<i>dief-jaer</i> <i>kat-jaer</i>	<i>diere-kenner</i> <i>plante-kenner</i>	<i>klere-maker</i> <i>kos-maker</i>	<i>snoek-roker</i> <i>ham-roker</i>
	<i>grond-besittende</i> <i>huis-besittende</i>	<i>museum-besoekende</i> <i>?pasiënt-besoekende</i>	<i>klip-brekende</i>	<i>das-draende</i>	<i>?dief-jagende</i> <i>?kat-jagende</i>			<i>snoek-rokende</i> <i>ham-rokende</i>
NP						<i>?wilde=diere-kenner</i>		<i>vars=vis-roker</i> <i>vars=vis-rokende</i>
JJ								
			<i>?nuut-gebreekte</i>		<i>moeg-gejaagde</i>		<i>slim-gemaakte</i>	<i>?rou-gerookte</i>
JV					<i>vinnig-jagende</i>			
		<i>gereed-besoekte</i>				<i>?goed-gekende</i>	<i>vinnig-gemaakte</i>	
PP		<i>(met=)paastyd-besoeker</i>						<i>(met=)*saagsels-roker</i>
		<i>(met=)*paastyd-besoekende</i>						<i>(met=)*saagsels-rokende</i>
		<i>(met=)*paastyd-besoekte</i>	<i>(op=die=)*vloer-gebreekte</i> <i>(met=h=)*hamen-gebreekte</i>	<i>(om=haar=)*nek-geëraede</i>	<i>(in=die=)*toem-gejaagde</i>		<i>(in=die=)laboratorium-gemaakte</i>	<i>(met=)*saagsels-gerookte</i>

GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS

(827)

	<i>besit</i> "own"	<i>besoek</i> "visit"	<i>breek</i> "break"	<i>dra</i> "wear"	<i>jaag</i> "chase"	<i>ken</i> "know"	<i>maak</i> "make"	<i>rook</i> "smoke"
Subject								
Direct object	<i>grond-besitter</i> <i>huis-besitter</i>	<i>museum-besoeker</i>	<i>klip-breker</i> <i>?bord-breker</i>	<i>hoed-draer</i>	<i>kat-jaer</i> <i>dief-jaer</i>	<i>diere-kenner</i> <i>rose-kenner</i>	<i>kos-maker</i> <i>bom-maker</i>	<i>snoek-roker</i> <i>ham-roker</i>
	<i>grond-besittende</i> <i>huis-besittende</i>	<i>museum-besoekende</i>	<i>klip-brekende</i>	<i>hoed-draende</i>	<i>?kat-jagende</i> <i>?dief-jagende</i>			<i>snoek-rokende</i> <i>ham-rokende</i>
Indirect object								<i>(vir=die=)*mark-roker</i>
								<i>(vir=die=)*mark-rokende</i>
Non-term (EP)		<i>(*op=sy=)?sterf-bed-besoeker</i> <i>(*in=die=) hospitaal-besoeker</i>					<i>(vir=die=)*inste-gemaakte</i>	<i>(vir=die=)*mark-gerookte</i>
		<i>(*op=sy=)sterf-bed-besoekende</i> <i>(*in=die=)hospitaal-besoekende</i>						<i>(met=)*saagsels-rokende</i>
		<i>(in=die=)?hospitaal-besoekte</i>	<i>(met=n=)*hamer-gebreekte</i>	<i>(op=sy=)*kop-gedraede</i>	<i>(uit=die=)*tuin-gejaagde</i>		<i>(in=sy=)ateljee-gemaakte</i>	<i>(met=)*saagsels-gerookte</i>

STRUCTURAL ADJACENCY

(828)

	<i>besit</i> "own"	<i>besoek</i> "visit"	<i>breek</i> "break"	<i>dra</i> "wear"	<i>jaag</i> "chase"	<i>ken</i> "know"	<i>maak</i> "make"	<i>rook</i> "smoke"
	<i>grond-besitter</i>	<i>museum-besoeker</i>	<i>klip-breker</i>	<i>das-draer</i>	<i>kat-jaer</i>	<i>diere-kenner</i>	<i>kos-maker</i>	<i>wors-roker</i>
	<i>grond-besittende</i>	<i>museum-besoekende</i>	<i>klip-brekende</i>	<i>das-draende</i>	<i>?kat-jagende</i>			<i>wors-rokende</i>
								<i>vars=vis-roker</i>
								<i>vars=vis-rokende</i>
		<i>(*in=die=)hospi- taal-besoeker</i>						<i>(met=) *saagsels- roker</i>
		<i>(*in=die=)hospi- taal-besoekende</i>						<i>(met=) *saagsels- rokende</i>
		<i>(in=die=) ?hospi- taal-besoekte</i>	<i>(met=h=) *hamer- gebreekte</i>	<i>(om=sy=) *nek- gedraede</i>	<i>(uit=die=) *tuin- gejaagde</i>	<i>(in=die=) ?rombuis- gemaakte</i>		<i>(met=) *saagsels- gerookte</i>
								<i>(vir=die=) *mark- roker</i>
								<i>(vir=die=) *mark- rokende</i>
			<i>(?vir=die=) *boef- gebreekte</i>				<i>(vir=die=) *gaste- gemaakte</i>	<i>(vir=die=) *mark- gerookte</i>
			<i>gereeld-besoekte</i>					
						<i>?goed-gekende</i>	<i>gereeld-gemaakte</i>	

(829)

THEMATIC RELATIONS

	<i>besit</i> "own"	<i>besoek</i> "visit"	<i>breek</i> "break"	<i>dra</i> "wear"	<i>jaag</i> "chase"	<i>ken</i> "know"	<i>maak</i> "make"	<i>rook</i> "smoke"
Accompaniment								<i>saam=met=die=ham-gerookte</i>
Agent								
Benefactive							<i>(vir=die=)*gaste-gemaakte</i>	<i>(vir=die=)*mark-roker</i> <i>(vir=die=)*mark-rokende</i> <i>(vir=die=)*mark-gerookte</i>
Duration				<i>(vir=h=)*jaar-gedraede</i>	<i>?(vir=h=)*uur-gejaagde</i>		<i>(binne=h=)*uur-gemaakte</i>	<i>(vir=h=)*uur-gerookte</i> <i>(vir=)*uitvoer-roker</i> <i>(vir=)*uitvoer-rokende</i> <i>(vir=)*uitvoer-gerookte</i>
Goal			<i>(vir=die=)*pret-gebreekte</i>				<i>(vir=die=)*kompetisie-gemaakte</i>	<i>(met=)*saagsels-roker</i> <i>(met=)*saagsels-rokende</i> <i>(met=)*saagsels-gerookte</i>
Instrument		<i>(met=h=)?toer-besoekte</i>	<i>(met=h=)*hamer-gebreekte</i>		<i>(met=h=)*sweep-gejaagde</i>		<i>(met=sy=)hand(e)-gemaakte</i>	
Location		<i>(in=die=)hospitaal-besoeker</i> <i>(in=die=)hospitaal-besoekende</i> <i>(in=die=)?hospitaal-besoekte</i>	<i>(op=die=)*vloer-gebreekte</i>	<i>(op=die=)*modeparade-gedraede</i>	<i>(op=die=)*werf-gejaagde</i>		<i>(in=die=)fabriek-gemaakte</i>	<i>(op=die=)*boot-gerookte</i>
Modality		<i>gereeld-besoekte</i>			<i>vinnig-jagende</i>	<i>?goed-gekende</i>	<i>vinnig-gemaakte</i>	
Patient	<i>huis-besitter</i> <i>huis-besittende</i>	<i>?pasient-besoeker</i> <i>?pasient-besoekende</i>	<i>klip-breker</i> <i>klip-brekende</i>	<i>das-draer</i> <i>das-draende</i>	<i>kat-jaer</i> <i>?kat-jagende</i>	<i>plante-kenner</i>	<i>wors-maker</i>	<i>ham-roker</i> <i>ham-rokende</i>
Source		<i>(uit=)*bewondering-besoekte</i>	<i>(uit=)*frustrasie-gebreekte</i>		<i>(uit=die=)*hok-gejaagde</i>		<i>(van=)*sy-gemaakte</i>	
Temporality		<i>(met=)paastyd-besoeker</i> <i>(met=)*paastyd-besoekende</i> <i>(met=)*paastyd-besoekte</i>	<i>(in=die=)*aand-gebreekte</i>	<i>(in=die=)*dag-gedraede</i>	<i>(in=die=)*nag-gejaagde</i>		<i>(in=die=)*oggend-gemaakte</i>	<i>(?in=die=)*nag-gerookte</i>
Theme ₁								
Theme ₂	<i>grond-besitter</i> <i>grond-besittende</i>	<i>museum-besoeker</i> <i>museum-besoekende</i>	<i>klip-breker</i> <i>klip-brekende</i>	<i>hoed-draer</i> <i>hoed-draende</i>	<i>vlieg-jaer</i> <i>?vlieg-jagende</i>	<i>diere-kenner</i>	<i>klere-maker</i>	<i>snoek-roker</i> <i>snoek-rokende</i>

2.4.2 Generalizations

2.4.2.1 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING THE INCORPORATION OF SYNTACTIC CATEGORIES

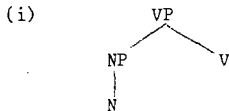
- a. -er and -end Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an obligatory transitive verb and of which the peripheral constituent is a noun.
- b. -er and -end Suffixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an obligatory transitive verb and of which the peripheral constituent is a noun phrase or a prepositional phrase.
- c. -end Suffixation unproductively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an obligatory transitive verb and of which the peripheral constituent is an adverb.
- d. ge- Prefixation fairly productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an obligatory transitive verb and of which the peripheral constituent is an adjective, an adverb or a prepositional phrase.

2.4.2.2 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING THE INCORPORATION OF GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS

- a. -er and -end Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an obligatory transitive verb and of which the peripheral constituent is a direct object.
- b. -er, -end and ge- Affixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an obligatory transitive verb and of which the peripheral constituent is an indirect object.
- c. -er and -end Suffixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an obligatory transitive verb and of which the peripheral constituent is an indirect object.
- d. ge- Prefixation fairly productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an obligatory transitive verb and of which the peripheral constituent is a prepositional phrase.

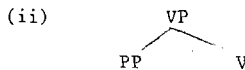
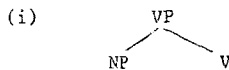
2.4.2.3 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING STRUCTURAL ADJACENCY

- a. -er and -end Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the VP has the following structure:



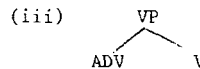
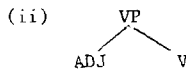
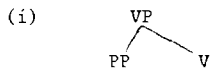
where V is an obligatory transitive verb.

- b. -er and -end Suffixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the VP has either of the following structures:



where V is an obligatory transitive verb.

- c. ge- Prefixation fairly productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the VP has either of the following structures:



where V is an obligatory transitive verb.

2.4.2.4 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING THE INCORPORATION OF THEMATIC RELATIONS

- a. -er and -end Suffixation unproductively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an obligatory transitive verb and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating the benefactive, a goal, instrument, location or temporality.
- b. ge- Prefixation fairly productively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an obligatory transitive verb and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating accompaniment, the benefactive, duration, a goal, an instrument, location, the source or temporality.
- c. -end Suffixation unproductively derives synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an obligatory transitive verb and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating modality.

- d. -er and -end Suffixation productively derive synthetic compounds from deep structure phrases of which the head is an obligatory transitive verb and of which the peripheral constituent has the thematic function of indicating the patient or theme.

2.4.2.5 GENERALIZATIONS REGARDING STRING ADJACENCY

It will appear from the analyses of the individual verbs in §2.4.3 below that the constituents that constitute the peripheral constituent of the synthetic compound must be adjacent to the verb which will constitute the head of the synthetic compound, in the deep structure phrase.

2.4.3 Some verbs

2.4.3.1 besit ("own")

Simple derivations:

<i>besit</i>	-ER	
own	-er	(= "owner")
<i>?besit</i>	-END(e)	
own	-ing	(= "owning")
<i>?besit(e)</i> ⁸		
-ed own		(= "owned")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(830) *dat Jan grond besit*
 that Jan land owns

-er : *grond - besit -ER*
 land own -er

-end : *grond - besit -END(e)*
 land own -ing

ge- : **grond - besit(e)*
 land -ed own
 (= "land-owned")

(831) *dat die klerk n huis besit*
 that the clerk a house owns

-er : *huis - besit -ER*
 house own -er

-end : *huis - besit -END(e)*
 house own -ing

ge- : **huis - besit(e)*
 house -ed own
 (= "house-owned")

(ii) Noun phrases

(832) *dat die oom n groot plaas besit*
 that the man a large farm owns

-er : **groot-plaas - besit -ER*
 large farm own -er

-end : **groot-plaas - besit -END(e)*
 large farm own -ing

ge- : **groot-plaas - besit(e)*
 large farm -ed own
 (= "large farm-owned")

(iii) Adjectives

(833) *?dat die man sy huis afbetaal besit*
 that the man his house paid owns

-er : **afbetaal - besit -ER*
 paid own -er

-end : **afbetaal - besit -END(e)*
 paid own -ing

ge- : **afbetaal - besit(e)*
 paid -ed own
 (= "paid-owned")

(iv) Adverbs

(834) *dat die boer grond daar besit*
 that the farmer land there owns

-er : **daar* - *besit* -ER
 there own -er

-end : **daar* - *besit* -END(e)
 there own -ing

ge- : **daar* - *besit(e)*
 there -ed own
 (= "there-owned")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(835) *dat Jan 'n huis in die dorp besit*
 that Jan a house in the town owns

-er : *(*in=die=*)*dorp* - *besit* -ER
 (in the) town own -er

-end : *(*in=die=*)*dorp* - *besit* -END(e)
 (in the) town own -ing

ge- : *(*in=die=*)*dorp* - *besit(e)*
 (in the) town -ed own
 (= "(in the) town-owned")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(836) **die boer besit*
 that the farmer owns

-er : **boer* - *besit* -ER
 farmer own -er

-end : **boer* - *besit* -END(e)
 farmer own -ing

ge- : **boer* - *besit(e)*
 farmer -ed own
 (= "farmer-owned")

besit is a transitive verb which must take an obligatory direct object-NP.

(ii) Direct object

(837) *dat die boer grond besit*
 that the farmer land owns

-er : *grond - besit -ER*
 land own -er

-end : *grond - besit -END(e)*
 land own -ing

ge- : **grond - besit(e)*
 land -ed own
 (= "land-owned")

(838) *dat Jan ook 'n huis besit*
 that Jan also a house owns

-er : *huis - besit -ER*
 house own -er

-end : *huis - besit -END(e)*
 house own -ing

ge- : **huis - besit(e)*
 house -ed own
 (= "house-owned")

(iii) Indirect object

(839) *?dat Jan die huis vir spekulasie besit*
 that Jan the house for speculation owns

-er : **(vir-)spekulasie - besit -ER*
 (for) speculation own -er

-end : **(vir-)spekulasie - besit -END(e)*
 (for) speculation own -ing

ge- : **(vir-)spekulasie - besit(e)*
 (for) speculation -ed own
 (= "(for) speculation-owned")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(840) *dat ons 'n huis by die see besit*
 that we a house by the seaside owns

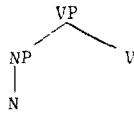
-er : *(by=die-)see - besit -ER
 (by the) seaside own -er

-end : *(by=die-)see - besit -END(e)
 (by the) seaside own -ing

ge- : *(by=die-)see - besit(e)
 (by the) seaside -ed own
 (= "(by the) seaside-owned")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



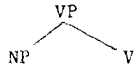
(841) *dat die boer grond besit*
 that the farmer land owns

-er : *grond - besit -ER*
 land own -er

-end : *grond - besit -END(e)*
 land own -ing

ge- : **grond - besit(e)*
 land -ed own
 (= "land-owned")

(ii)



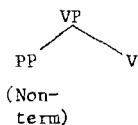
(842) *dat die boer baie grond besit*
 that the farmer a lot of land owns

-er : **baie = grond - besit -ER*
 a lot of land own -er

-end : **baie = grond - besit -END(e)*
 a lot of land own -ing

ge- : **baie = grond - besit(e)*
 a lot of land -ed own
 (= "a lot of land-owned")

(iii)



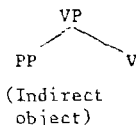
(843) *dat hulle h huis by die see besit*
 that they a house by the seaside owns

-er : *(by=die=)see - besit -ER
 (by the) seaside own -er

-end : *(by=die=)see - besit -END(e)
 (by the) seaside own -ing

ge- : *(by=die=)see - besit(e)
 (by the) seaside -ed own
 (= "(by the) seaside-owned")

(iv)



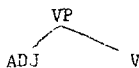
(844) ?*dat Kobus h huis vir spekulasie besit*
 that Kobus a house for speculation owns

-er : *(vir=)spekulasie - besit -ER
 (for) speculation own -er

-end : *(vir=)spekulasie - besit -END(e)
 (for) speculation own -ing

ge- : *(vir=)spekulasie - besit(e)
 (for) speculation -ed own
 (= "(for) speculation-owned")

(v)

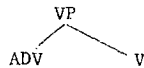


(845) ?*dat Jan sy huis afbetaal besit*
 that Jan his house paid owns

-er : *afbetaal - besit -ER
 paid own -er

-end : *afbetaal - besit -END(e)
 paid own -ing
ge- : *afbetaal - besit(e)
 paid -ed own
 (= "paid-owned")

(vi)



(846) *dat die boer grond daar besit*
 that the farmer land there owns

-er : *daar - besit -ER
 there own -er

-end : *daar - besit -END(e)
 there own -ing

ge- : *daar - besit(e)
 there -ed own
 (= "there-owned")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(847) *dat Jan die plaas tesame met verskeie huise*
 that Jan the farm together with several houses
besit
 owns

-er : *tesame = met =verskeie=huise - besit -ER
 together with several houses own -er

-end : *tesame = met =verskeie=huise - besit -END(e)
 together with several houses own -ing

ge- : *tesame = met =verskeie=huise - besit(e)
 together with several houses -ed own
 (= "together with several houses-owned")

(ii) Agent

(848) *dat die miljoenêr die huis besit*
 that the millionaire the house owns

-er : *miljoenêr - besit -ER
 millionaire own -er

-end : *miljoenêr - besit -END(e)
 millionaire own -ing

ge- : *miljoenêr - besit(e)
 millionaire -ed own
 (= "millionaire-owned")

(iii) Benefactive

(849) ?*dat hy die huis vir sy kinders besit*
 that he the house for his children owns

-er : *(vir=sy)=kinders - besit -ER
 (for his) children own -er

-end : *(vir=sy)=kinders - besit -END(e)
 (for his) children own -ing

ge- : *(vir=sy)=kinders - besit(e)
 (for his) children -ed own
 (= "(for his) children-owned")

(iv) Duration

(850) ?*dat die boer sy plaas vir 'n jaar besit*
 that the farmer his farm for a year owns

-er : *(vir=h)=jaar - besit -ER
 (for a) year own -er

-end : *(vir=h)=jaar - besit -END(e)
 (for a) year own -ing

ge- : *(vir=h)=jaar - besit(e)
 (for a) year -ed own
 (= "(for a) year-owned")

(v) Goal

(851) *dat Jan die huis vir sy oudag besit*
 that Jan the house for his old age owns

-er : *(vir=sy=)oudag - besit -ER
 (for his) old age own -er

-end : *(vir=sy=)oudag - besit -END(e)
 (for his) old age own -ing

ge- : *(vir=sy=)oudag - besit(e)
 (for his) old age -ed own
 (= "(for his) old age-owned")

(vi) Instrument

(852) *dat hy die motor op _____ huurpag besit*
 that he the car in terms of a lease owns

-er : *(op =)huurpag - besit -ER
 (in terms of a) lease own -er

-end : *(op =)huurpag - besit -END(e)
 (in terms of a) lease own -ing

ge- : *(op =)huurpag - besit(e)
 (in terms of a) lease -ed own
 (= "(in terms of a) lease-owned")

(vii) Location

(853) *dat Jan n huis by die see besit*
 that Jan a house by the seaside owns

-er : *(by=die=)see - besit -ER
 (by the) seaside own -er

-end : *(by=die=)see - besit -END(e)
 (by the) seaside own -ing

ge- : *(by=die=)see - besit(e)
 (by the) seaside -ed own
 (= "(by the) seaside-owned")

(viii) Modality

(854) *dat Jan die plaas weer besit*
 that Jan the farm again owns

-er : **weer - besit -ER*
 again own -er

-end : **weer - besit -END(e)*
 again own -ing

ge- : **weer - besit(e)*
 again -ed own
 (= "again-owned")

(ix) Patient

(855) *dat Kobus n huis besit*
 that Kobus a house owns

-er : *huis - besit -ER*
 house own -er

-end : *huis - besit -END(e)*
 house own -ing

ge- : **huis - besit(e)*
 house -ed own
 (= "house-owned")

(x) Source

(856) ?*dat Jan die huis uit gierigheid besit*
 that Jan the house out of greed owns

-er : **(uit =)gierigheid - besit -ER*
 (out of) greed own -er

-end : **(uit =)gierigheid - besit -END(e)*
 (out of) greed own -ing

ge- : **(uit =)gierigheid - besit(e)*
 (out of) greed -ed own
 (= "(out of) greed-owned")

(xi) Temporality

- (857) *dat hy nou 'n plaas besit*
 that he now a farm owns
- er : **nou - besit -ER*
 now own -er
- end : **nou - besit -END(e)*
 now own -ing
- ge- : **nou - besit(e)*
 now -ed own
 (= "now-owned")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

- (858) **dat die boer besit*
 that the farmer owns
- er : **boer - besit -ER*
 farmer own -er
- end : **boer - besit -END(e)*
 farmer own -ing
- ge- : **boer - besit(e)*
 farmer -ed own
 (= "farmer-owned")

(*besit* is an obligatory transitive verb.)

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

- (859) *dat die boer grond besit*
 that the farmer land owns
- er : *grond - besit -ER*
 land own -er
- end : *grond - besit -END(e)*
 land own -ing
- ge- : **grond - besit(e)*
 land -ed own
 (= "land-owned")

2.4.3.2 besoek ("visit")

Simple derivations:	<i>besoek</i>	-ER	
	visit	-er	(= "visiter")
	? <i>besoek</i>	-END(e)	
	visit	-ing	(= "visiting")
	<i>besoek</i> (te) ⁸⁾		
	-ed visit		(= "visited")

a. Syntactic categories(i) Nouns

(860) *dat die toeriste die museum besoek*
 that the tourists the museum visit

-er : *museum - besoek -ER*
 museum visit -er

-end : *museum - besoek -END(e)*
 museum visit -ing

ge- : **museum - besoek(te)*
 museum -ed visit
 (= "museum-visited")

(861) *dat die dokter die pasiënt besoek*
 that the doctor the patient visits

-er : *?pasiënt - besoek -ER*
 patient visit -er

-end : *?pasiënt - besoek -END(e)*
 patient visit -ing

ge- : **pasiënt - besoek(te)*
 patient -ed visit
 (= "patient-visited")

(ii) Noun phrases

(862) *dat die dominee die bedroefde familie besoek*
 that the minister the bereaved family visits

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>bedroefde=familie</i> - <i>besoek</i> -ER bereaved family visit -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>bedroefde=familie</i> - <i>besoek</i> -END(e) bereaved family visit -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>bedroefde=familie</i> - <i>besoek(te)</i> bereaved family -ed visit (= "bereaved family-visited")

(iii) Adjectives

(863) ?*dat die mense die sieke sterwend besoek*
that the people the sick person dying visit

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>sterwend</i> - <i>besoek</i> -ER dying visit -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>sterwend</i> - <i>besoek</i> -END(e) dying visit -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	* <i>sterwend</i> - <i>besoek(te)</i> dying -ed visit (= "dying-visited")

(iv) Adverbs

(864) *dat toeriste die museum gereeld besoek*
that tourists the museum regularly visit

<u>-er</u>	:	* <i>gereeld</i> - <i>besoek</i> -ER regularly visit -er
<u>-end</u>	:	* <i>gereeld</i> - <i>besoek</i> -END(e) regularly visit -ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	<i>gereeld</i> - <i>besoek(te)</i> regularly -ed visit (= "regularly-visited")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(865) *dat Christene die Heilige Land met paastyd besoek*
that Christians the Holy Land at Easter visit

<u>-er</u>	:	(<i>met=</i>) <i>paastyd</i> - <i>besoek</i> -ER (at) Easter visit -er
------------	---	---

-end : (met=)*paastyd - besoek -END(e)
 (at) Easter visit -ing

ge- : (met=)*paastyd - besoek(te)
 (at) Easter -ed visit
 (= "(at) Easter-visited")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(866) *dat die familie besoek
 that the family visits

-er : *familie - besoek -ER
 family visit -er

-end : *familie - besoek -END(e)
 family visit -ing

ge- : *familie - besoek(te)
 family -ed visit
 (= "family-visited")

(ii) Direct object

(867) dat die toeriste die museum besoek
 that the tourists the museum visit

-er : museum - besoek -ER
 museum visit -er

-end : museum - besoek -END(e)
 museum visit -ing

ge- : *museum - besoek(te)
 museum -ed visit
 (= "museum-visited")

(iii) Indirect object

(868) dat die man die warmbron vir sy gesondheid besoek
 that the man the spa for his health visits

-er : *(vir=sy)gesondheid - besoek -ER
 (for his) health visit -er

-end : *(vir=sy =)gesondheid - besoek -END(e)
 (for his) health visit -ing

ge- : *(vir=sy =)gesondheid - besoek(te)
 (for his) health -ed visit
 (= "(for his) health-visited")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(869) *dat die familie die ou oom op sy sterfbed*
 that the family the old man on his deathbed

besoek
 visit

-er : (*op=sy=)?sterfbed - besoek -ER
 (on his) deathbed visit -er

-end : (*op=sy=) sterfbed - besoek -END(e)
 (on his) deathbed visit -ing

ge- : *(op=sy =)sterfbed - besoek(te)
 (on his) deathbed -ed visit
 (= "(on his) deathbed-visited")

(870) *dat die dokter sy pasiënte in die hospitaal*
 that the doctor his patients in the hospital

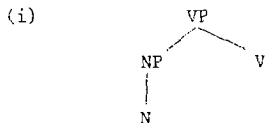
besoek
 visits

-er : (*in=die=)hospitaal - besoek -ER
 (in the) hospital visit -er

-end : (*in=die=)hospitaal - besoek -END(e)
 (in the) hospital visit -ing

ge- : (in=die=)?hospitaal - besoek(te)
 (in the) hospital -ed visit
 (= "(in the) hospital-visited")

c. Structural adjacency



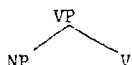
(871) *dat die toeriste die museum besoek*
 that the tourists the museum visit

-er : *museum - besoek -ER*
 museum visit -er

-end : *museum - besoek -END(e)*
 museum visit -ing

ge- : **museum - besoek(te)*
 museum -ed visit
 (= "museum-visited")

(ii)



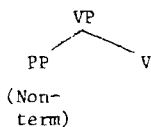
(872) *dat die dominee die bedroefde familie besoek*
 that the minister the bereaved family visits

-er : **bedroefde=familie - besoek -ER*
 bereaved family visit -er

-end : **bedroefde=familie - besoek -END(e)*
 bereaved family visit -ing

ge- : **bedroefde=familie - besoek(te)*
 bereaved family -ed visit
 (= "bereaved family-visited")

(iii)



(873) *dat die dokter sy pasiënte in die hospitaal*
 that the doctor his patients in the hospital

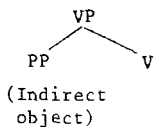
besoek
 visits

-er : *(*in=die=hospitaal - besoek -ER*
 (in the) hospital visit -er

-end : *(*in=die=hospitaal - besoek -END(e)*
 (in the) hospital visit -ing

ge- : (in-die-)?hospitaal - besoek(te)
 (in the) hospital -ed visit
 (= "(in the) hospital-visited")

(iv)



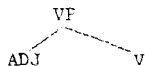
(874) *dat die oom die warmbron vir sy gesondheid besoek*
 that the man the spa for his health visits

-er : *(vir=sy =)gesondheid - besoek -ER
 (for his) health visit -er

-end : *(vir=sy =)gesondheid - besoek -END(e)
 (for his) health visit -ing

ge- : *(vir=sy =)gesondheid - besoek(te)
 (for his) health -ed visit
 (= "(for his) health-visited")

(v)



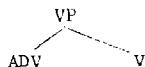
(875) *?dat die mense die sieke sterwend besoek*
 that the people the sick person dying visit

-er : *sterwend - besoek -ER
 dying visit -er

-end : *sterwend - besoek -END(e)
 dying visit -ing

ge- : *sterwend - besoek(te)
 dying -ed visit
 (= "dying-visited")

(vi)



(876) *dat toeriste die museum gereeld besoek*
 that tourists the museum regularly visit

-er : *gereeld - besoek -ER
regularly visit -er

-end : *gereeld - besoek -END(e)
regularly visit -ing

ge- : gereeld - besoek(te)
regularly -ed visit
(= "regularly-visited")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(877) dat sy Hong Kong tesame met Japan besoek
that she Hong Kong together with Japan visits

-er : *tesame = met = Japan - besoek -ER
together with Japan visit -er

-end : *tesame = met = Japan - besoek -END(e)
together with Japan visit -ing

ge- : *tesame = met = Japan - besoek(te)
together with Japan -ed visit
(= "together with Japan-visited")

(ii) Agent

(878) dat die familie die ou siek man besoek
that the family the old sick man visits

-er : *familie - besoek -ER
family visit -er

-end : *familie - besoek -END(e)
family visit -ing

ge- : *familie - besoek(te)
family -ed visit
(= "family-visited")

(iii) Benefactive

(879) *dat Jan die warmbron ter wille van sy gesin*
 that Jan the spa for the sake of his family

besoek
 visits

- er : **ter = wille = van = sy = gesin - besoek* -ER
 for the sake of his family visit -er
- end : **ter = wille = van = sy = gesin - besoek* -END(e)
 for the sake of his family visit -ing
- ge- : **ter = wille = van = sy = gesin - besoek(te)*
 for the sake of his family -ed visit
 (= "for the sake of his family-visited")

(iv) Duration

(880) *dat hulle die Ooste vir 'n maand besoek*
 that they the East for a month visit

- er : **(vir=h=)maand - besoek* -ER
 (for a) month visit -er
- end : **(vir=h=)maand - besoek* -END(e)
 (for a) month visit -ing
- ge- : **(vir=h=)maand - besoek(te)*
 (for a) month -ed visit
 (= "(for a) month-visited")

(v) Goal

(881) *dat die pelgrims Mekka vir hulle sieleheil*
 that the pilgrims Mecca for their spiritual well-being

besoek
 visit

- er : **vir=hulle = sieleheil - besoek* -ER
 for their spiritual well-being visit -er
- end : **vir=hulle = sieleheil - besoek* -END(e)
 for their spiritual well-being visit -ing

ge- : *vir=*hulle* = *sieleheil* - *besoek(te)*
 for their spiritual well-being -ed visit
 (= "for their spiritual well-being-visited")

(vi) Instrument

(882) *dat hulle Europa met 'n toer besoek*
 that they Europe with a tour visit

-er : *(*met -h=*)*toer* - *besoek* -ER
 (with a) tour visit -er

-end : *(*met -h=*)*toer* - *besoek* -END(e)
 (with a) tour visit -ing

ge- : (*met -h=*)?*toer* - *besoek(te)*
 (with a) tour -ed visit
 (= "(with a) tour-visited")

(vii) Location

(883) *dat die dokter sy pasiënte in die hospitaal*
 that the doctor his patients in the hospital

besoek
 visits

-er : (**in=die=*)*hospitaal* - *besoek* -ER
 (in the) hospital visit -er

-end : (**in=die=*)*hospitaal* - *besoek* -END(e)
 (in the) hospital visit -ing

ge- : (*in=die=*)?*hospitaal* - *besoek(te)*
 (in the) hospital -ed visit
 (= "(in the) hospital-visited")

(viii) Modality

(884) *dat hulle die sieke gereeld besoek*
 that they the sick person regularly visit

-er : **gereeld* - *besoek* -ER
 regularly visit -er

-end : **gereeld* - *besoek* -END(e)
 regularly visit -ing

ge- : gereeld - besoek(te)
regularly -ed visit
(= "regularly-visited")

(ix) Patient

(885) dat die dokter die pasiënt besoek
that the doctor the patient visits

-er : ?pasiënt - besoek -ER
patient visit -er

-end : ?pasiënt - besoek -END(e)
patient visit -ing

ge- : *pasiënt - besoek(te)
patient -ed visit
(= "patient-visited")

(x) Source

(886) dat toeriste die museum uit bewondering besoek
that tourists the museum out of admiration visit

-er : *(uit =)bewondering - besoek -ER
(out of) admiration visit -er

-end : *(uit =)bewondering - besoek -END(e)
(out of) admiration visit -ing

ge- : (uit =)*bewondering - besoek(te)
(out of) admiration -ed visit
(= "(out of) admiration-visited")

(xi) Temporality

(887) dat die Christene die Heilige Land met paastyd
that the Christians the Holy Land at Easter
besoek
visit

-er : (met =)paastyd - besoek -ER
(at) Easter visit -er

-end : (met =)*paastyd - besoek -END(e)
(at) Easter visit -ing

ge- : (met =)*paastyd - besoek(te)
 (at) Easter -ed visit
 (= "(at) Easter-visited")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(888) *dat die vrou besoek
 that the woman visits

-er : *vrou - besoek -ER
 woman visit -er

-end : *vrou - besoek -END(e)
 woman visit -ing

ge- : *vrou - besoek(te)
 woman -ed visit
 (= "woman-visited")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(889) dat baie toeriste die museum besoek
 that many tourists the museum visit

-er : museum - besoek -ER
 museum visit -er

-end : museum - besoek -END(e)
 museum visit -ing

ge- : *museum - besoek(te)
 museum -ed visit
 (= "museum-visited")

2.4.3.3 breek ("break")

Simple derivations: breek -ER
 break -er (= "breaker")
 breek -END(e)
 break -ing (= "breaking")
 GE- breek(te)
 -ed break (= "broken")

a. Syntactic categories(i) Nouns

(890) *dat die masjien klippe breek*
 that the machine rocks breaks

-er : *klip - breek -ER*
 rock break -er

-end : *klip - breek -END(e)*
 rock break -ing

ge- : **klip - GE- breek(te)*
 rock -ed break
 (= "rock-broken")

(891) *dat sy 'n bord breek*
 that she a plate breaks

-er : *?bord - breek -ER*
 plate break -er

-end : **bord - breek -END(e)*
 plate break -ing

ge- : **bord - GE- breek(te)*
 plate -ed break
 (= "plate-broken")

(ii) Noun phrases

(892) *dat Piet die duur koppie breek*
 that Piet the expensive cup breaks

-er : **duur = koppie - breek -ER*
 expensive cup break -er

-end : **duur = koppie - breek -END(e)*
 expensive cup break -ing

ge- : **duur = koppie - GE- breek(te)*
 expensive cup -ed break
 (= "expensive cup-broken")

(iii) Adjectives

(893) ?dat die kinders die venster nuut breek
 that the children the window new break

-er : *nuut - breek -ER
 new break -er

-end : *nuut - breek -END(e)
 new break -ing

ge- : ?nuut - GE- breek(te)
 new -ed break
 (= "new-broken")

(iv) Adverbs

(894) dat sy haar arm maklik breek
 that she her arm easily breaks

-er : *maklik - breek -ER
 easily break -er

-end : *maklik - breek -END(e)
 easily break -ing

ge- : *maklik - GE- breek(te)
 easily -ed break
 (= "easily-broken")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(895) dat die Griekse dansers borde op die vloer
 that the Greek dancers plates on the floor

breek
 break

-er : *(op=die=)vloer - breek -ER
 (on the) floor break -er

-end : *(op=die=)vloer - breek -END(e)
 (on the) floor break -ing

ge- : (op=die=)*vloer - GE- breek(te)
 (on the) floor -ed break
 (= "(on the) floor-broken")

(896) *dat Sarie die venster met 'n hamer breek*
 that Sarie the window with a hammer breaks

-er : *(met =n-)hamer - breek -ER
 (with a) hammer break -er

-end : *(met =n-)hamer - breek -END(e)
 (with a) hammer break -ing

ge- : (met =n-)*hamer - GE- breek(te)
 (with a) hammer -ed break
 (= "(with a) hammer-broken")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(897) **dat Piet breek*
 that Piet breaks

-er : *Piet - breek -ER
 Piet break -er

-end : *Piet - breek -END(e)
 Piet break -ing

ge- : *Piet - GE- breek(te)
 Piet -ed break
 (= "Piet-broken")

(ii) Direct object

(898) *dat die masjien klippe breek*
 that the machine rocks breaks

-er : klip - breek -ER
 rock break -er

-end : klip - breek -END(e)
 rock break -ing

ge- : *klip - GE- breek(te)
 rock -ed break
 (= "rock-breaker")

(899) *dat die Grieke tradisioneel borde breek*
 that the Greeks traditionally plates break

-er : ?bord - breek -ER
 plate break -er

-end : *bord - breek -END(e)
 plate break -ing

ge- : *bord - GE- breek(te)
 plate -ed break
 (= "plate-broken")

(iii) Indirect object

(900) dat die man die bottel vir sy vrou breek
 that the man the bottle for his wife breaks

-er : *(vir=sy =)vrou - breek -ER
 (for his) wife break -er

-end : *(vir=sy =)vrou - breek -END(e)
 (for his) wife break -ing

ge- : *(vir=sy =)vrou - GE- breek(te)
 (for his) wife -ed break
 (= "(for his) wife-broken")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(901) dat hy die bottel met 'n hamer breek
 that he the bottle with a hammer breaks

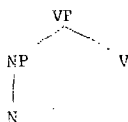
-er : *(met =n=)hamer - breek -ER
 (with a) hammer break -er

-end : *(met =n=)hamer - breek -END(e)
 (with a) hammer break -ing

ge- : (met =n=)*hamer - GE- breek(te)
 (with a) hammer -ed break
 (= "(with a) hammer-broken")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



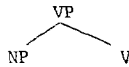
(902) *dat die masjien klippe breek*
 that the machine rocks break

-er : klip - breek -ER
 rock break -er

-end : klip - breek -END(e)
 rock break -ing

ge- : *klip - GE- breek(te)
 rock -ed break
 (= "rock-broken")

(ii)



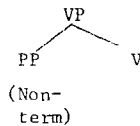
(903) *dat die kinders die nuwe venster breek*
 that the children the new window break

-er : *nuwe=venster - breek -ER
 new window break -er

-end : *nuwe=venster - breek -END(e)
 new window break -ing

ge- : *nuwe=venster - GE- breek(te)
 new window -ed break
 (= "new window-broken")

(iii)



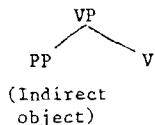
(904) *dat hy die bottel met 'n hamer breek*
 that he the bottle with a hammer breaks

-er : *(met =n=)hamer - breek -ER
 (with a) hammer break -er

-end : *(met =n=)hamer - breek -END(e)
 (with a) hammer break -ing

ge- : (met =n=)*hamer - GE- breek(te)
 (with a) hammer -ed break
 (= "(with a) hammer-broken")

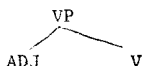
(iv)



(905) *dat hy die venster vir die boef breek*
 that he the window for the villain breaks

- er : *(vir=die=)boef - breek -ER
 (for the) villain break -er
- end : *(vir=die=)boef - breek -END(e)
 (for the) villain break -ing
- ge- : ?(vir=die=)boef - GE- breek(te)
 (for the) villain -ed break
 (= "(for the) villain-broken")

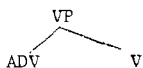
(v)



(906) *?dat die seun die koppie nuut breek*
 that the boy the cup new breaks

- er : *nuut - breek -ER
 new break -er
- end : *nuut - breek -END(e)
 new break -ing
- ge- : ?nuut - GE- breek(te)
 new -ed break
 (= "new-broken")

(vi)



(907) *dat die motor daar breek*
 that the car there breaks

- er : *daar - breek -ER
 there break -er
- end : *daar - breek -END(e)
 there break -ing

ge- : **daar* - GE- *breek(te)*
 there -ed break
 (= "there-broken")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(908) *dat Pietie die venster saam met die deur*
 that Pietie the window together with the door

breek
 breaks

-er : **saam* = *met* = *die=deur* - *breek* -ER
 together with the door break -er

-end : **saam* = *met* = *die=deur* - *breek* -END(e)
 together with the door break -ing

ge- : **saam* = *met* = *die=deur* - GE- *breek(te)*
 together with the door -ed break
 (= "together with the door-broken")

(ii) Agent

(909) *dat die inbreker die venster breek om in die*
 that the burglar the window breaks to into the

huis te kom
 house get

-er : **inbreker* - *breek* -ER
 burglar break -er

-end : **inbreker* - *breek* -END(e)
 burglar break -ing

ge- : **inbreker* - GE- *breek(te)*
 burglar -ed break
 (= "burglar-broken")

(iii) Benefactive

(910) *dat Jan die bottel vir sy vrou breek*
 that Jan the bottle for his wife breaks

- er : **(vɪr=sy =)vrou* - *breek* -ER
(for his) wife break -er
- end : **(vɪr=sy =)vrou* - *breek* -END(e)
(for his) wife break -ing
- ge- : **(vɪr=sy =)vrou* - GE- *breek*(te)
(for his) wife -ed break
(= "(for his) wife-broken")

(iv) Duration

- (911) **dat die koppie vir 'n sekonde breek*
that the cup for a second breaks

- er : **(vɪr=n=)sekonde* - *breek* -ER
(for a) second break -er
- end : **(vɪr=n=)sekonde* - *breek* -END(e)
(for a) second break -ing
- ge- : **(vɪr=n=)sekonde* - GE- *breek*(te)
(for a) second -ed break
(= "(for a) second-broken")

(v) Goal

- (912) *dat die kinders die venster vir die pret breek*
that the children the window for the fun break

- er : **(vɪr=die=)pret* - *breek* -ER
(for the) fun break -er
- end : **(vɪr=die=)pret* - *breek* -END(e)
(for the) fun break -ing
- ge- : **(vɪr=die=)pret* - GE- *breek*(te)
(for the) fun -ed break
(= "(for the) fun-broken")

(vi) Instrument

- (913) *dat sy die bottel met 'n hamer breek*
that she the bottle with a hammer breaks

- er : **(met=n=)hamer* - *breek* -ER
(with a) hammer break -er

-end : *(met= h=)hamer - breek -END(e)
 (with a) hammer break -ing

ge- : (met= h=)*hamer - GE- breek(te)
 (with a) hammer -ed break
 (= "(with a) hammer-broken")

(vii) Location

(914) dat die Grieke borde op die vloer breek
 that the Greeks plates on the floor break

-er : *(op=die=)vloer - breek -ER
 (on the) floor break -er

-end : *(op=die=)vloer - breek -END(e)
 (on the) floor break -ing

ge- : (op=die=)*vloer - GE- breek(te)
 (on the) floor -ed break
 (= "on the) floor-broken")

(viii) Modality

(915) dat Piet die venster weer breek
 that Piet the window again breaks

-er : *weer - breek -ER
 again break -er

-end : *weer - breek -END(e)
 again break -ing

ge- : *weer - GE- breek(te)
 again -ed break
 (= "again-broken")

(ix) Patient

(916) dat die masjien klippe breek
 that the machine rocks breaks

-er : klip - breek -ER
 rock break -er

-end : klip - breek -END(e)
 rock break -ing

ge- : *klip - GE- breek(te)
 rock -ed break
 (= "rock-broken")

(x) Source

(917) *dat sy die koppie uit frustrasie breek*
 that she the cup out of frustration breaks

-er : *(uit =)frustrasie - breek -ER
 (out of) frustration break -er

-end : *(uit =)frustrasie - breek -END(e)
 (out of) frustration break -ing

ge- : (uit =)*frustrasie - GE- breek(te)
 (out of) frustration -ed break
 (= "(out of) frustration-broken")

(xi) Temporality

(918) *dat die inbreker vensters in die aand breek*
 that the burglar windows at night breaks

-er : *(in=die=)aand - breek -ER
 (at) night break -er

-end : *(in=die=)aand - breek -END(e)
 (at) night break -ing

ge- : (in=die=)*aand - GE- breek(te)
 (at) night -ed break
 (= "(at) night-broken")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(919) *dat Piet breek*
 that Piet breaks

-er : *Piet - breek -ER
 Piet break -er

-end : *Piet - breek -END(e)
 Piet break -ing

ge- : *Piet - GE- breek(te)
 Piet -ed break
 (= "Piet-broken")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(920) *dat die masjien die klip breek*
 that the machine the rock breaks

-er : *klip - breek -ER*
 rock break -er

-end : *klip - breek -END(e)*
 rock break -ing

ge- : **klip - GE- breek(te)*
 rock -ed break
 (= "rock-broken")

2.4.3.4 dra ("wear")

Simple derivations: *dra -ER* (= "wearer")
 wear -er
?dra -END(e) (= "wearing")
 wear -ing
?GE- dra(de) (= "worn")
 -ed wear

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(921) *dat die oom 'n das dra*
 that the man a tie wears

-er : *das - dra -ER*
 tie wear -er

-end : *das - dra -END(e)*
 tie wear -ing

ge- : **das - GE- dra(de)*
 tie -ed wear
 (= "tie-worn")

(922) *dat die meisie snackse klere dra*
 that the girl funny clothes wears

-er : *snaakse=klere - dra -ER
 funny clothes wear -er

-end : *snaakse=klere - dra -END(e)
 funny clothes wear -ing

ge- : *snaakse=klere - GE- dra(de)
 funny clothes -ed wear
 (= "funny clothes-worn")

(iii) Adjectives

(923) *dat die man die das geknoop dra*
 that the man the tie knotted wears

-er : *geknoop - dra -ER
 knotted wear -er

-end : *geknoop - dra -END(e)
 knotted wear -ing

ge- : *geknoop - GE- dra(de)
 knotted -ed wear
 (= "knotted-worn")

(iv) Adverbs

(924) *dat Sannie die gewaad soms dra*
 that Sannie the garment sometimes wears

-er : *soms - dra -ER
 sometimes wear -er

-end : *soms - dra -END(e)
 sometimes wear -ing

ge- : *soms - GE- dra(de)
 sometimes -ed wear
 (= "sometimes-worn")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(925) *dat die meisie die sery om haar nek dra*
 that the girl the scarf around her neck wears

-er : *(om = haar=)nek - dra -ER
 (around her) neck wear -er

-end : *(om = haar-)nek - dra -END(e)
 (around her) neck wear -ing

ge- : (om = haar-)*nek - GE- dra(de)
 (around her) neck -ed wear
 (= "(around her) neck-worn")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(926) *dat die soldaat dra
 that the soldier wears

-er : *soldaat - dra -ER
 soldier wear -er

-end : *soldaat - dra -END(e)
 soldier wear -ing

ge- : *soldaat - GE- dra(de)
 soldier -ed wear
 (= "soldier-worn")

(ii) Direct object

(927) dat die ou man 'n hoed dra
 that the old man a hat wears

-er : hoed - dra -ER
 hat wear -er

-end : hoed - dra -END(e)
 hat wear -ing

ge- : *hoed - GE- dra(de)
 hat -ed wear
 (= "hat-worn")

(iii) Indirect object

(928) dat die mense serpe vir die warmte dra
 that the people scarves for the warmth wear

-er : *(vir=die=)warmte - dra -ER
 (for the) warmth wear -er

-end : *(vir=die=)warmte - dra -END(e)
 (for the) warmth wear -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)warmte - GE- dra(de)
 (for the) warmth -ed wear
 (= "(for the) warmth-worn")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(929) *dat die soldaat die mus op sy kop dra*
 that the soldier the cap on his head wears

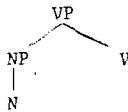
-er : *(op=sy =)kop - dra -ER
 (on his) head wear -er

-end : *(op=sy =)kop - dra -END(e)
 (on his) head wear -ing

ge- : (op=sy =)*kop - GE- dra(de)
 (on his) head -ed wear
 (= "(on his) head-worn")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



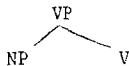
(930) *dat die man n das dra*
 that the man a tie wears

-er : das - dra -ER
 tie wear -er

-end : das - dra -END(e)
 tie wear -ing

ge- : *das - GE- dra(de)
 tie -ed wear
 (= "tie-worn")

(ii)



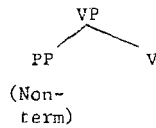
(931) *da* *die* *vrou* *h* *rooi* *rok* *dra*
 that the woman a red dress wears

-er : **rooi*= *rok* - *dra* -*ER*
 red dress wear -er

-end : **rooi*= *rok* - *dra* -*END*(e)
 red dress wear -ing

ge- : **rooi*= *rok* - *GE-* *dra*(*de*)
 red dress -ed wear
 (= "red dress-worn")

(iii)



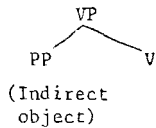
(932) *da* *die* *soldaat* *die* *serp* *om* *sy* *nek* *dra*
 that the soldier the scarf around his neck wears

-er : *(*om* = *sy*)=*nek* - *dra* -*ER*
 (around his) neck wear -er

-end : *(*om* = *sy*)=*nek* - *dra* -*END*(e)
 (around his) neck wear -ing

ge- : (*om* = *sy*)=*nek* - *GE-* *dra*(*de*)
 (around his) neck -ed wear
 (= "(around his) neck-worn")

(iv)



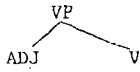
(933) *da* *hulle* *serpe* *vir* *die* *warmte* *dra*
 that they scarves for the warmth wear

-er : *(*vir*=*die*)=*warmte* - *dra* -*ER*
 (for the) warmth wear -er

-end : *(*vir*=*die*)=*warmte* - *dra* -*END*(e)
 (for the) warmth wear -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)wannte - GE- dra(de)
 (for the) warmth -ed wear
 (= "(for the) warmth-worn")

(v)



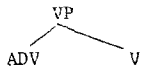
(934) *dat die man sy das geknoop dra*
 that the man his tie knotted wears

-er : *geknoop - dra -ER
 knotted wear -er

-end : *geknoop - dra -END(e)
 knotted wear -ing

ge- : *geknoop - GE- dra(de)
 knotted -ed wear
 (= "knotted-worn")

(vi)



(935) *dat sy die trui net saans dra*
 that she the jersey only in the evening wears

-er : *saans - dra -ER
 in the evening wear -er

-end : *saans - dra -END(e)
 in the evening wear -ing

ge- : *saans - GE- dra(de)
 in the evening -ed wear
 (= "in the evening-worn")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(936) *dat die man die trui saam met die*
 that the man the jersey together with the
baadjie dra
 jacket wears

<u>-er</u>	:	*saam = met =die=baadjie - dra	-ER
		together with the jacket wear	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	*saam = met =die=baadjie - dra	-END(e)
		together with the jacket wear	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*saam = met =die=baadjie - GE-	dra(de)
		together with the jacket -ed	wear
		(= "together with the jacket-worn")	

(ii) Agent

(937) *dat Jan 'n das dra om netjies te lyk*
 that Jan a tie wears to neat look

<u>-er</u>	:	*Jan - dra	-ER
		Jan wear	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	*Jan - dra	-END(e)
		Jan wear	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*Jan - GE-	dra(de)
		Jan -ed	wear
		(= "Jan-worn")	

(iii) Benefactive

(938) *dat die meisie 'n sarp vir haar verkoue dra*
 that the girl a scarf for her cold wears

<u>-er</u>	:	*(vir=haar=)verkoue - dra	-ER
		(for her) cold wear	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	*(vir=haar=)verkoue - dra	-END(e)
		(for her) cold wear	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*(vir=haar=)verkoue - GE-	dra(de)
		(for her) cold -ed	wear
		(= "(for her) cold-worn")	

(iv) Duration

(939) *dat sy haar klere net vir 'n jaar dra*
 that she her clothes only for a year wears

<u>-er</u>	:	*(vir=h=)jaar - dra	-ER
		(for a) year wear	-er

-end : *(vir=h=)jaar - dra -END(e)
(for a) year wear -ing

ge- : (vir=h=)*jaar - GE- dra(de)
(for a) year -ed wear
(= "(for a) year-worn")

(v) Goal

(940) dat die mense klere vir beskerming dra
that the people clothes for protection wear

-er : *(vir=)beskerming - dra -ER
(for) protection wear -er

-end : *(vir=)beskerming - dra -END(e)
(for) protection wear -ing

ge- : *(vir=)beskerming - GE- dra(de)
(for) protection -ed wear
(= "(for) protection-worn")

(vi) Instrument

(941) *dat die soldaat die uniform met sy lyf dra
that the soldier the uniform with his body wears

-er : *(met =sy =)lyf - dra -ER
(with his) body wear -er

-end : *(met =sy =)lyf - dra -END(e)
(with his) body wear -ing

ge- : *(met =sy =)lyf - GE- dra(de)
(with his) body -ed wear
(= "(with his) body-worn")

(vii) Location

(942) dat Muriel die klere op die modeparade dra
that Muriel the clothes in the fashion show wears

-er : *(op=die=)modeparade - dra -ER
(in the) fashion show wear -er

-end : *(op=die=)modeparade - dra -END(e)
(in the) fashion show wear -ing

ge- : (op=die=) *modeparade - GE- dra(de)
 (in the) fashion show -ed wear
 (= "(in the) fashion show-worn")

(viii) Modality

(943) *dat Jan sy hoed graag dra*
 that Jan his hat willingly wears

-er : *graaq - dra -ER
 willingly wear -er

-end : *graaq - dra -END(e)
 willingly wear -ing

ge- : *graaq - GE- dra(de)
 willingly -ed wear
 (= "willingly-worn")

(ix) Patient

(944) *dat die sakeman n das dra*
 that the businessman a tie wears

-er : das - dra -ER
 tie wear -er

-end : das - dra -END(e)
 tie wear -ing

ge- : *das - GE- dra(de)
 tie -ed wear
 (= "tie-worn")

(x) Source

(945) *dat sy die ring uit respek dra*
 that she the ring out of respect wears

-er : *uit = respek - dra -ER
 out of respect wear -er

-end : *uit = respek - dra -END(e)
 out of respect wear -ing

ge- : *uit = respek - GE- dra(de)
 out of respect -ed wear
 (= "out of respect-worn")

(xi) Temporality

(946) *dat sy stemmige klere in die dag dra*
 that she subdued clothes in the day wears

-er : *(in=die=)dag - dra -ER
 (in the) day wear -er

-end : *(in=die=)dag - dra -END(e)
 (in the) day wear -ing

ge- : (in=die=)*dag - GE- dra(de)
 (in the) day -ed wear
 (= "(in the) day-worn")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(947) **dat Muriel dra*
 that Muriel wears

-er : *Muriel - dra -ER
 Muriel wear -er

-end : *Muriel - dra -END(e)
 Muriel wear -ing

ge- : *Muriel - GE- dra(de)
 Muriel -ed wear
 (= "Muriel-worn")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(948) *dat die oom gewoonlik n hoed dra*
 that the man usually a hat wears

-er : hoed - dra -ER
 hat wear -er

-end : hoed - dra -END(e)
 hat wear -ing

ge- : *hoed - GE- dra(de)
 hat -ed wear
 (= "hat-worn")

2.4.3.5 jaag ("chase")

Simple derivations: *jaag* -ER (= "chaser")
 chase -er
 jaag -END(e)
 chase -ing (= "chasing")
 GE- *jaag*(de)
 -ed chase (= "chased")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(949) *dat Jan die dief jaag*
 that Jan the thief chases

-er : *dief* - *jaag* -ER
 thief chase -er

-end : ?*dief* - *jaag* -END(e)
 thief chase -ing

ge- : **dief* - GE- *jaag*(de)
 thief -ed chase
 (= "thief-chased")

(950) *dat die hond die kat jaag*
 that the dog the cat chases

-er : *kat* - *jaag* -ER
 cat chase -er

-end : ?*kat* - *jaag* -END(e)
 cat chase -ing

ge- : **kat* - GE- *jaag*(de)
 cat -ed chase
 (= "cat-chased")

(ii) Noun phrases

(951) *dat die honde die wilde kat jaag*
 that the dogs the wild cat chase

-er : *wilde=kat - jaag -ER
 wild cat chase -er

-end : *wilde=kat - jaag -END(e)
 wild cat chase -ing

ge- : *wilde=kat - GE- jaag(de)
 wild cat -ed chase
 (= "wild cat-chased")

(iii) Adjectives

(952) *dat die hond die kat moeg jaag*
 that the dog the cat tired chases

-er : *moeg - jaag -ER
 tired chase -er

-end : *moeg - jaag -END(e)
 tired chase -ing

ge- : moeg - GE- jaag(de)
 tired -ed chase
 (= "tired-chased")

(iv) Adverbs

(953) *dat die hond die kat vinnig jaag*
 that the dog the cat fast chases

-er : *vinnig - jaag -ER
 fast chase -er

-end : vinnig - jaag -END(e)
 fast chase -ing

ge- : *vinnig - GE- jaag(de)
 fast -ed chase
 (= "fast-chased")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(954) *dat die hond die kat in die boom jaag*
 that the dog the cat into the tree chases

-er : *(in = die-)boom - jaag -ER
 (into the) tree chase -er

-end : *(in = die=)boom - jcag -END(e)
 (into the) tree chase -ing

ge- : (in = die=)*boom - GE- jaag(de)
 (into the) tree -ed chase
 (= "(into the) tree-chased")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(955) *dat die hond jaag
 that the dog chases

-er : *hond - jaag -ER
 dog chase -er

-end : *hond - jaag -END(e)
 dog chase -ing

ge- : *hond - GE- jaag(de)
 dog -ed chase
 (= "dog-chased")

(ii) Direct object

(956) dat die hond die kat jaag
 that the dog the cat chases

-er : kat - jaag -ER
 cat chase -er

-end : ?kat - jaag -END(e)
 cat chase -ing

ge- : *kat - GE- jaag(de)
 cat -ed chase
 (= "cat-chased")

(957) dat Jan die dief jaag
 that Jan the thief chases

-er : dief - jaag -ER
 thief chase -er

-end : ?dief - jaag -END(e)
 thief chase -ing

ge- : *kat - GE- jaag(de)
 thief -ed chase
 (= "thief-chased")

(iii) Indirect object

(958) dat die hond die haas vir die jagter jaag
 that the dog the hare for the hunter chases

-er : *(vir=die=)jagter - jaag -ER
 (for the) hunter chase -er

-end : *(vir=die=)jagter - jaag -END(e)
 (for the) hunter chase -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)jagter - GE- jaag(de)
 (for the) hunter -ed chase
 (= "(for the) hunter-chased")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(959) dat die kinders die voëls uit die tuin
 that the children the birds out of the garden
 jaag
 chases

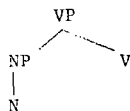
-er : *(uit = die=)tuin - jaag -ER
 (out of the) garden chase -er

-end : *(uit = die=)tuin - jaag -END(e)
 (out of the) garden chase -ing

ge- : (uit = die=)*tuin - GE- jaag(de)
 (out of the) garden -ed chase
 (= "(out of the) garden-chased")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



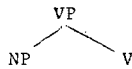
(960) dat die hond die kat jaag
 that the dog the cat chases

-er : *kat - jaag -ER*
 cat chase -er

-end : **kat - jaag -END(e)*
 cat chase -ing

ge- : **kat - GE- jaag(de)*
 cat -ed chase
 (= "cat-chased")

(ii)



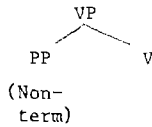
(961) *dat die hond die wilde kat jaag*
 that the dog the wild cat chases

-er : **wilde=kat - jaag -ER*
 wild cat chase -er

-end : **wilde=kat - jaag -END(e)*
 wild cat chase -ing

ge- : **wilde=kat - GE- jaag(de)*
 wild cat -ed chase
 (= "wild cat-chased")

(iii)



(962) *dat die kinders die voëls uit die tuin*
 that the children the birds out of the garden

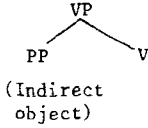
jaag
 chase

-er : **(uit = die=)tuin - jaag -ER*
 (out of the) garden chase -er

-end : **(uit = die=)tuin - jaag -END(e)*
 (out of the) garden chase -ing

ge- : *(uit = die=)*tuin - GE- jaag(de)*
 (out of the) garden -ed chase
 (= "(out of the) garden-chased")

(iv)



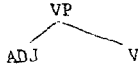
(963) *dat die hond die haas vir die jagter jaag*
 that the dog the hare for the hunter chases

-er : *(vir=die=)jagter - jaag -ER
 (for the) hunter chase -er

-end : *(vir=die=)jagter - jaag -END(e)
 (for the) hunter chase -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)jagter - GE- jaag(de)
 (for the) hunter -ed chase
 (= "(for the) hunter-chased")

(v)



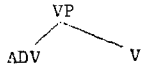
(964) *dat die hond die kat moeg jaag*
 that the dog the cat tired chases

-er : *moeg - jaag -ER
 tired chase -er

-end : *moeg - jaag -END(e)
 tired chase -ing

ge- : moeg - GE- jaag(de)
 tired -ed chase
 (= "tired-chased")

(vi)



(965) *dat die kat die hoenders snags jaag*
 that the cat the chickens at night chases

-er : *snags - jaag -ER
 at night chase -er

-end : *snags - jaag -END(e)
 at night chase -ing

ge- : *snags - GE- jaag(de)
 at night -ed chase
 (= "at night-chased")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(966) *dat Fido die kat saam met die ander honde*
 that Fido the cat together with the other dogs

jaag
 chases

-er : *saam = met =die=ander=honde - jaag -ER
 together with the other dogs chase -er

-end : *saam = met =die=ander=honde - jaag -END(e)
 together with the other dogs chase -ing

ge- : *saam = met =die=ander=honde - GE- jaag(de)
 together with the other dogs -ed chase
 (= "together with the other dogs-chased")

(ii) Agent

(967) *dat die kat die kuikens vir die pret jaag*
 that the cat the chickens for the fun chases

-er : *(vir=die=)pret - jaag -ER
 (for the) fun chase -er

-end : *(vir=die=)pret - jaag -END(e)
 (for the) fun chase -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)pret - GE- jaag(de)
 (for the) fun -ed chase
 (= "(for the) fun-chased")

(iii) Benefactive

(968) *dat die hond die haas vir die jagter jaag*
 that the dog the hare for the hunter chases

-er : *(vir=die=)jagter - jaag -ER
 (for the) hunter chase -er

- end : *(vir=die=)jagter - jaag -END(e)
(for the) hunter chase -ing
- ge- : *(vir=die=)jagter - GE- jaag(de)
(for the) hunter -ed chase
(= "(for the) hunter-chased")

(iv) Duration

- (969) dat die hond die kat vir 'n uur jaag
that the dog the cat for an hour chases

- er : *(vir= n=)uur - jaag -ER
(for an) hour chase -er
- end : *(vir= n=)uur - jaag -END(e)
(for an) hour chase -ing
- ge- : ?(vir= n=)*uur - GE- jaag(de)
(for an) hour -ed chase
(= "(for an) hour-chased")

(v) Goal

- (970) dat die kinders die voëls vir die pret jaag
that the children the birds for the fun chase

- er : *(vir=die=)pret - jaag -ER
(for the) fun chase -er
- end : *(vir=die=)pret - jaag -END(e)
(for the) fun chase -ing
- ge- : *(vir=die=)pret - GE- jaag(de)
(for the) fun -ed chase
(= "(for the) fun-chased")

(vi) Instrument

- (971) dat die boer die skape met 'n sweep jaag
that the farmer the sheep with a whip chases

- er : *(met= n=)sweep - jaag -ER
(with a) whip chase -er
- end : *(met= n=)sweep - jaag -END(e)
(with a) whip chase -ing

ge- : (met= h=) *sweep - GE- jaag(de)
 (with a) whip -ed chase
 (= "(with a) whip-chased")

(vii) Location

(972) *dat die kat die hoenders op die werf jaag*
 that the cat the chickens in the yard chases

-er : *(op=die=)werf - jaag -ER
 (in the) yard chase -er

-end : *(op=die=)werf - jaag -END(e)
 (in the) yard chase -ing

ge- : (op=die=) *werf - GE- jaag(de)
 (in the) yard -ed chase
 (= "(in the) yard-chased")

(viii) Modality

(973) *dat die kinders die kat vinnig jaag*
 that the children the cat fast chases

-er : *vinnig - jaag -ER
 fast chase -er

-end : vinnig - jaag -END(e)
 fast chase -ing

ge- : *vinnig - GE- jaag(de)
 fast -ed chase
 (= "fast-chased")

(ix) Patient

(974) *dat die hond die kat jaag*
 that the dog the cat chases

-er : kat - jaag -ER
 dog chase -er

-end : ?kat - jaag -END(e)
 dog chase -ing

ge- : *kat - GE- jaag(de)
 cat -ed chase
 (= "cat-chased")

(x) Source

(975) dat die kat die hoenders uit die hok jaag
 that the cat the chickens out of the run chases

-er : *(uit = die=)hok - jaag -ER
 (out of the) run chase -er

-end : *(uit = die=)hok - jaag -END(e)
 (out of the) run chase -ing

ge- : (uit = die=)*hok - GE- jaag(de)
 (out of the) run -ed chase
 (= "(out of the) run-chased")

(xi) Temporality

(976) dat die kat die muise in die nag jaag
 that the cat the mice in the night chases

-er : *(in=die=)nag - jaag -ER
 (in the) night chase -er

-end : *(in=die=)nag - jaag -END(e)
 (in the) night chase -ing

ge- : (in=die=)*nag - GE- jaag(de)
 (in the) night -ed chase
 (= "(in the) night-chased")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(977) *dat die hond jaag
 that the dog chases

-er : *hond - jaag -ER
 dog chase -er

-end : *hond - jaag -END(e)
 dog chase -ing

ge- : *hond - GE- jaag(de)
 dog -ed chase
 (= "dog-chased")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(978) *dat Jan die vlieg jaag*
 that Jan the fly chases

-er : *vlieg - jaag -ER*
 fly chase -er

-end : *?vlieg - jaag -END(e)*
 fly chase -ing

ge- : **vlieg - GE- jaag(de)*
 fly -ed chase
 (= "fly-chased")

2.4.3.6 ken ("know")
 (= "to be knowledgeable about")

Simple derivations: *ken -ER*
 know -er

ken -END(e)
 know -ing (= "knowing")

?GE- ken(de)
 -ed know (= "known")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(979) *dat die wildbewaarder diere ken*
 that the game warden animals knows

-er : *dier(e) - ken -ER*
 animal(s) know -er

-end : **dier(e) - ken -END(e)*
 animal(s) know -ing

ge- : **dier(e) - GE- ken(de)*
 animal(s) -ed know
 (= "animal(s)-known")

(980) *dat die botanikus plante ken*
 that the botanist plants knows

-er : *plant(e) - ken -ER*
 plant(s) know -er

-end : **plant(e) - ken -END(e)*
 plant(s) know -ing

ge- : **plant(e) - GE- ken(de)*
 plant(s) -ed know
 (= "plant(s)-known")

(ii) Noun phrases

(981) *dat die wildebewarder wilde diere ken*
 that the game warden wild animals knows

-er : *?wilde=diere - ken -ER*
 wild animals know -er

-end : **wilde=diere - ken -END(e)*
 wild animals know -ing

ge- : **wilde=diere - GE- ken(de)*
 wild animals -ed know
 (= "wild animals-known")

(iii) Adjectives

(982) *?dat die wildebewarder diere wild ken*
 that the game warden animals wild knows

-er : **wild - ken -ER*
 wild know -er

-end : **wild - ken -END(e)*
 wild know -ing

ge- : **wild - GE- ken(de)*
 wild -ed know
 (= "wild-known")

(iv) Adverbs

(983) *dat die botanikus die plantsoorte goed ken*
 that the botanist the plant varieties well knows

<u>-er</u>	:	*goed - ken	-ER
		well know	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	*goed - ken	-END(e)
		well know	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	?goed - GE- ken(de)	
		well -ed know	
		(= "well-known")	

(v) Prepositional phrases

(984) *dat die wildbewaarder die diere in die veld ken*
 that the game warden the animals in the veld knows

<u>-er</u>	:	*((in=die)=veld - ken	-ER
		(in the) veld know	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	*((in=die)=veld - ken	-END(e)
		(in the) veld know	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*((in=die)=veld - GE- ken(de)	
		(in the) veld -ed know	
		(= "(in the) veld-known")	

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

(985) **dat die wildbewaarder ken*
 that the game warden knows

<u>-er</u>	:	*wildbewaarder - ken	-ER
		game warden know	-er
<u>-end</u>	:	*wildbewaarder - ken	-END(e)
		game warden know	-ing
<u>ge-</u>	:	*wildbewaarder - GE- ken(de)	
		game warden -ed know	
		(= "game warden-known")	

(ii) Direct object

(986) *dat die wildbewaarder diere ken*
 that the game warden animals knows

-er : *dier(e)* - *ken* -ER
 animal(s) know -er

-end : **dier(e)* - *ken* -END(e)
 animal(s) know -ing

ge- : **dier(e)* - GE- *ken(de)*
 animal(s) -ed know
 (= "animal(s)-known")

(987) *dat Jan rose ken*
 that Jan roses knows

-er : *rose* - *ken* -ER
 roses know -er

-end : **rose* - *ken* -END(e)
 roses know -ing

ge- : **rose* - GE- *ken(de)*
 roses -ed know
 (= "roses-known")

(iii) Indirect object

(988) **dat die botanikus die plante vir sy plesier ken*
 that the botanist the plants for his pleasure knows

-er : *(*vir=sy* =) *plesier* - *ken* -ER
 (for his) pleasure know -er

-end : *(*vir=sy* =) *plesier* - *ken* -END(e)
 (for his) pleasure know -ing

ge- : *(*vir=sy* =) *plesier* - GE- *ken(de)*
 (for his) pleasure -ed know
 (= "(for his) pleasure-known")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(989) *dat die widdewaarder die diere in die bos ken*
 that the game warden the animals in the wood knows

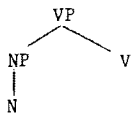
-er : *(*in=die*=) *bos* - *ken* -ER
 (in the) wood know -er

-end : *(*in=die*=) *bos* - *ken* -END(e)
 (in the) wood know -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)bos - GE- ken(de)
 (in the) wood -ed know
 (= "(in the) wood-known")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



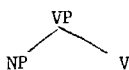
(990) *dat die wildbewaarder diere ken*
 that the game warden animals knows

-er : *dier(e)* - *ken* -ER
 animal(s) know -er

-end : **dier(e)* - *ken* -END(e)
 animal(s) know -ing

ge- : **dier(e)* - GE- *ken(de)*
 animal(s) -ed know
 (= "animal(s)-known")

(ii)



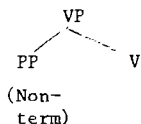
(991) *dat die botanikus baie plante ken*
 that the botanist many plants knows

-er : **baie=plante* - *ken* -ER
 many plants know -er

-end : **baie=plante* - *ken* -END(e)
 many plants know -ing

ge- : **baie=plante* - GE- *ken(de)*
 many plants -ed know
 (= "many plants-known")

(iii)



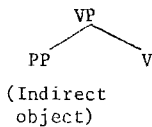
(992) *dat Jan die diere van die veld ken*
 that Jan the animals of the veld knows

-er : *(van=die=)veld - ken -ER
 (of the) veld know -er

-end : *(van=die=)veld - ken -END(e)
 (of the) veld know -ing

ge- : *(van=die=)veld - GE- ken(de)
 (of the) veld -ed know
 (= "(of the) veld-known")

(iv)



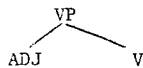
(993) **dat die botanikus plante vir h lewe ken*
 that the botanist plants for a life knows

-er : *(vir=h=)lewe - ken -ER
 (for a) life know -er

-end : *(vir=h=)lewe - ken -END(e)
 (for a) life know -ing

ge- : *(vir=h=)lewe - GE- ken(de)
 (for a) life -ed know
 (= "(for a) life-known")

(v)



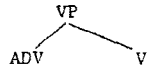
(994) *dat die wildebewarder die diere net wild ken*
 that the game warden the animals only wild knows

-er : *wild - ken -ER
 wild know -er

-end : *wild - ken -END(e)
 wild know -ing

ge- : *wild - GE- ken(de)
 wild -ed know
 (= "wild-known")

(vi)



(995) *dat hy die plante goed ken*
 that he the plants well knows

-er : *goed - ken -ER
 well know -er

-end : *goed - ken -END(e)
 well know -ing

ge- : ?goed - GE- ken(de)
 well -ed know
 (= "well-known")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(996) *dat die wildbewaarder die voëls saam met die*
 that the game warden the birds together with the
diere ken
 animals knows

-er : *saam = met =die=diere - ken -ER
 together with the animals know -er

-end : *saam = met =die=diere - ken -END(e)
 together with the animals know -ing

ge- : *saam = met =die=diere - GE- ken(de)
 together with the animals -ed know
 (= "together with the animals-known")

(ii) Agent

(997) *dat Jan diere ken*
 that Jan animals knows

-er : *Jan - ken -ER
 Jan know -er

-end : *Jan - ken -END(e)
 Jan know -ing

ge- : *Jan - GE- ken(de)
 Jan -ed know
 (= "Jan-known")

(iii) Benefactive

(998) *dat die wilbewaarder diere vir sy seun ken
 that the game warden animals for his son knows

-er : *(vir=sy =)seun - ken -ER
 (for his) son know -er

-end : *(vir=sy =)seun - ken -END(e)
 (for his) son know -ing

ge- : *(vir=sy =)seun - GE- ken(de)
 (for his) son -ed know
 (= "(for his) son-known")

(iv) Duration

(999) ?dat hy die plante vir 'n leeftyd ken
 that he the plants for a lifetime knows

-er : *(vir=n=)leef tyd - ken -ER
 (for a) lifetime know -er

-end : *(vir=n=)leef tyd - ken -END(e)
 (for a) lifetime know -ing

ge- : *(vir=n=)leef tyd - GE- ken(de)
 (for a) lifetime -ed know
 (= "(for a) lifetime-known")

(v) Goal

(1000) ?dat hy plante vir die plesier ken
 that he plants for the pleasure knows

-er : *(vir=die=)plesier - ken -ER
 (for the) pleasure know -er

-end : *(vir=die=)plesier - ken -END(e)
 (for the) pleasure know -ing

ge- : *(vir=die=)plesier - GE- ken(de)
 (for the) pleasure -ed know
 (= "(for the) pleasure-known")

(vi) Instrument

(1001) ?dat die wildbewaarder die diere met sy verstand
 that the game warden the animals with his mind

ken
 knows

-er : *(met =sy =)verstand - ken -ER
 (with his) mind know -er

-end : *(met =sy =)verstand - ken -END(e)
 (with his) mind know -ing

ge- : *(met =sy =)verstand - GE- ken(de)
 (with his) mind -ed know
 (= "(with his) mind-known")

(vii) Location

(1002) dat Jan die diere in die bos ken
 that Jan the animals in the wood knows

-er : *(in=die=)bos - ken -ER
 (in the) wood know -er

-end : *(in=die=)bos - ken -END(e)
 (in the) wood know -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)bos - GE- ken(de)
 (in the) wood -ed know
 (= "(in the) wood-known")

(viii) Modality

(1003) dat Bernard die plante goed ken
 that Bernard the plants well know

-er : *goed - ken -ER
 well know -er

-end : *goed - ken -END(e)
 well know -ing

ge- : ?goed - GE- ken(de)
 well -ed know
 (= "well-known")

(ix) Patient

(1004) dat die botanikus plante ken
 that the botanist plants knows

-er : plant(e) - ken -ER
 plant(s) know -er

-end : *plant(e) - ken -END(e)
 plant(s) know -ing

ge- : *plant(e) - GE- ken(de)
 plant(s) -ed know
 (= "plant(s)-known")

(x) Source

(1005) dat hy diere van sy kinderdae af ken
 that he animals since his childhood days knows

-er : *van = sy = kinderdæ = af - ken -ER
 since his childhood days know -er

-end : *van = sy = kinderdæ = af - ken -END(e)
 since his childhood days know -ing

ge- : *van = sy = kinderdæ = af - GE- ken(de)
 since his childhood days -ed know
 (= "since his childhood days-known")

(xi) Temporality

(1006) *dat hy die diere in die dag ken
 that he the animals in the day knows

-er : *(in=die=)dag - ken -ER
 (in the) day know -er

-end : *(in=die=)dag - ken -END(e)
 (in the) day know -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)dag - GE- ken(de)
 (in the) day -ed know
 (= "(in the) day-known")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(1007) *dat die botanikus ken*
 that the botanist knows

- er : **botanikus* - *ken* -ER
 botanist . know -er
- end : **botanikus* - *ken* -END(e)
 botanist know -ing
- ge- : **botanikus* - GE- *ken(de)*
 botanist -ed know
 (= "botanist-known")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(1008) *dat die wildbewaarder diere ken*
 that the game warden animals knows

- er : *dier(e)* - *ken* -ER
 animal(s) know -er
- end : **dier(e)* - *ken* -END(e)
 animal(s) know -ing
- ge- : **dier(e)* - GE- *ken(de)*
 animal(s) -ed know
 (= "animal(s)-known")

2.4.3.7 maak ("make")

- Simple derivations: *maak* -ER (= "maker")
 make -er (= "maker")
 ?*maak* -END(e)
 make -ing (= "making")
 GE- *maak(te)*
 -ed make (= "made")

a. Syntactic categories(i) Nouns

(1009) *dat die man klere maak*
 that the man clothes makes

-er : klere - maak -ER
 clothes make -er

-end : *klere - maak -END(e)
 clothes make -ing

ge- : *klere - GE- maak(te)
 clothes -ed make
 (= "clothes-made")

(1010) *dat die kok kos maak*
 that the cook food makes

-er : kos - maak -ER
 food make -er

-end : *kos - maak -END(e)
 food make -ing

ge- : *kos - GE- maak(te)
 food -ed make
 (= "food-made")

(ii) Noun phrases

(1011) *dat die sanger mooi plate maak*
 that the singer beautiful records makes

-er : *mooi = plate - maak -ER
 beautiful records make -er

-end : *mooi = plate - maak -END(e)
 beautiful records make -ing

ge- : *mooi = plate - GE- maak(te)
 beautiful records -ed make
 (= "beautiful records-made")

(iii) Adjective

(1012) *dat die onderwyser die kinders slim maak*
 that the teacher the children intelligent makes

-er : **slim* - *maak* -ER
 intelligent make -er

-end : **slim* - *maak* -END(e)
 intelligent make -ing

ge- : *slim* - GE- *maak(te)*
 intelligent -ed make
 (= "intelligent-made")

(iv) Adverbs

(1013) *dat sy klere vinnig maak*
 that she clothes fast makes

-er : **vinnig* - *maak* -ER
 fast make -er

-end : **vinnig* - *maak* -END(e)
 fast make -ing

ge- : *vinnig* - GE- *maak(te)*
 fast -ed make
 (= "fast-made")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(1014) *dat die wetenskaplike die bom in die laboratorium*
 that the scientist the bomb in the laboratory

maak
 makes

-er : *(*in=die=*)*laboratorium* - *maak* -ER
 (in the) laboratory make -er

-end : *(*in=die=*)*laboratorium* - *maak* -END(e)
 (in the) laboratory make -ing

ge- : (*in=die=*)*laboratorium* - GE- *maak(te)*
 (in the) laboratory -ed make
 (= "(in the) laboratory-made")

b. Grammatical functions(i) Subject

(1015) *dat die kok maak
 that the cook makes

-er : *kok - maak -EE
 cook make -er

-end : *kok - maak -END(e)
 cook make -ing

ge- : *kok - GE- maak(te)
 cook -ed make
 (= "cook-made")

(ii) Direct object

(1016) dat die kok kos maak
 that the cook food makes

-er : kos - maak -EE
 food make -er

-end : *kos - maak -END(e)
 food make -ing

ge- : *kos - GE- maak(te)
 food -ed make
 (= "food-made")

(1017) dat die wetenskaplike 1 bom maak
 that the scientist a bomb makes

-er : bom - maak -EE
 bomb make -er

-end : *bom - maak -END(e)
 bomb make -ing

ge- : *bom - GE- maak(te)
 bomb -ed make
 (= "bomb-made")

(iii) Indirect object

(1018) *dat die kok kos vir die gaste maak*
 that the cook food for the guests makes

- er : *(vir=die=)gaste - maak -ER
 (for the) guests make -er
- end : *(vir=die=)gaste - maak -END(e)
 (for the) guests make -ing
- ge- : (vir=die=)*gaste - GE- maak(te)
 (for the) guests -ed make
 (= "(for the) guests-made")

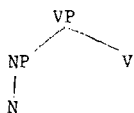
(iv) Non-term (PP)

(1019) *dat die kunstenaar beelde in sy ateljee maak*
 that the artist sculptures in his studio makes

- er : *(in=sy =)ateljee - maak -ER
 (in his) studio make -er
- end : *(in=sy =)ateljee - maak -END(e)
 (in his) studio make -ing
- ge- : (in=sy =)ateljee - GE- maak(te)
 (in his) studio -ed make
 (= "(in his) studio-made")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)

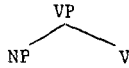


(1020) *dat die kok kos maak*
 that the cook food makes

- er : kos - maak -ER
 food make -er
- end : *kos - maak -END(e)
 food make -ing

ge- : *kos - GE- maak(te)
 food -ed make
 (= "food-made")

(ii)



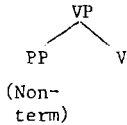
(1021) *dat die ontwerper deftige klere maak*
 that the designer smart clothes makes

-er : *deftige=klere - maak -ER
 smart clothes make -er

-end : *deftige=klere - maak -END(e)
 smart clothes make -ing

ge- : *deftige=klere - GE- maak(te)
 smart clothes -ed make
 (= "smart clothes-made")

(iii)



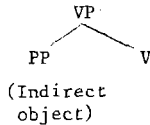
(1022) *dat hy die kos in die kombuis maak*
 that he the food in the kitchen makes

-er : *(in=die=kombuis - maak -ER
 (in the) kitchen make -er

-end : *(in=die=kombuis - maak -END(e)
 (in the) kitchen make -ing

ge- : (in=die=?kombuis - GE- maak(te)
 (in the) kitchen -ed make
 (= "(in the) kitchen-made")

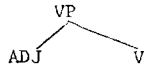
(iii)



(1023) *dat sy kos vir die gaste maak*
 that she food for the guests makes

- er : *(vir=die=)gaste - maak -ER
 (for the) guests make -er
- end : *(vir=die=)gaste - maak -END(e)
 (for the) guests make -ing
- ge- : (vir=die=)*gaste - GE- maak(te)
 (for the) guests -ed make
 (= "(for the) guests-made")

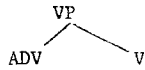
(v)



- (1024) *dat die onderwyser die kinders slim maak*
 that the teacher the children intelligent makes

- er : *slim - maak -ER
 intelligent make -er
- end : *slim - maak -END(e)
 intelligent make -ing
- ge- : slim - GE- maak(te)
 intelligent -ed make
 (= "intelligent-made")

(vi)



- (1025) *dat Sarie die tert gereeld maak*
 that Sarie the tart regularly makes

- er : *gereeld - maak -ER
 regularly make -er
- end : *gereeld - maak -END(e)
 regularly make -ing
- ge- : gereeld - GE- maak(te)
 regularly -ed make
 (= "regularly-made")

d. Thematic relations(i) Accompaniment

(1026) *dat Marie die klere saam met haar ma*
 that Marie the clothes together with her mother
maak
 makes

-er : *saam = met =haar=ma - maak -ER
 together with her mother make -er

-end : *saam = met =haar=ma - maak -END(e)
 together with her mother make -ing

ge- : *saam = met =haar=ma - GE- maak(te)
 together with her mother -ed make
 (= "together with her mother-made")

(ii) Agent

(1027) *dat die kok die kos vir die gaste maak*
 that the cook the food for the guests makes

-er : *kok - maak -ER
 cook make -er

-end : *kok - maak -END(e)
 cook make -ing

ge- : *kok - GE- maak(te)
 cook -ed make
 (= "cook-made")

(iii) Benefactive

(1028) *dat Sannie tee vir die gaste maak*
 that Sannie tea for the guests makes

-er : *(vir=die=)gaste - maak -ER
 (for the) guests make -er

-end : *(vir=die=)gaste - maak -END(e)
 (for the) guests make -ing

ge- : (vir=die=)*gaste - GE- maak(te)
 (for the) guests -ed make
 (= "(for the) guests-made")

(iv) Duration

(1029)	<i>?dat</i>	<i>sy</i>	<i>die rok</i>	<i>binne</i>	<i>n uur</i>	<i>maak</i>
	that	she	the dress	within	an hour	makes
	<u>-er</u>	:	*(<i>binne = n</i>)uur	-	maak	-ER
			(within an) hour		make	-er
	<u>-end</u>	:	*(<i>binne = n</i>)uur	-	maak	-END(e)
			(within an) hour		make	-ing
	<u>ge-</u>	:	(<i>binne = n</i>)*uur	-	GE- maak(te)	
			(within an) hour	-ed	make	
			(= "(within an) hour-made")			

(v) Goal

(1030)	<i>dat</i>	<i>sy</i>	<i>klere</i>	<i>vir die</i>	<i>kompetisie</i>	<i>maak</i>
	that	she	clothes	for the	competition	makes
	<u>-er</u>	:	*(<i>vir=die=</i>)kompetisie	-	maak	-ER
			(for the) competition		make	-er
	<u>-end</u>	:	*(<i>vir=die=</i>)kompetisie	-	maak	-END(e)
			(for the) competition		make	-ing
	<u>ge-</u>	:	(<i>vir=die=</i>)kompetisie	-	GE- maak(te)	
			(for the) competition	-ed	make	
			(= "(for the) competition-made")			

(vi) Instrument

(1031)	<i>dat</i>	<i>hy</i>	<i>die kas</i>	<i>met sy</i>	<i>hande</i>	<i>maak</i>
	that	he	the cupboard	with his	hands	makes
	<u>-er</u>	:	*(<i>met =sy =</i>)hande	-	maak	-ER
			(with his) hands		make	-er
	<u>-end</u>	:	*(<i>met =sy =</i>)hande	-	maak	-END(e)
			(with his) hands		make	-ing
	<u>ge-</u>	:	(<i>met =sy =</i>)hand(e)	-	GE- maak(te)	
			(with his) hand(s)	-ed	make	
			(= "(with his) hand(s)-made")			

(vii) Location

(1032)	<i>dat</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>meisies</i>	<i>klere</i>	<i>in die fabriek</i>	<i>maak</i>
	that	the	girls	clothes	in the factory	makes
	<u>-er</u>	:	*(in=die=)fabriek - maak		-ER	
			(in the) factory		make	-er
	<u>-end</u>	:	*(in=die=)fabriek - maak		-END(e)	
			(in the) factory		make	-ing
	<u>ge-</u>	:	(in=die=)fabriek - GE- maak(te)			
			(in the) factory		-ed	make
			(= "(in the) factory-made")			

(viii) Modality

(1033)	<i>dat</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>vrou</i>	<i>tee</i>	<i>vinnig</i>	<i>maak</i>
	that	the	woman	tea	fast	makes
	<u>-er</u>	:	*vinnig - maak		-ER	
			fast		make	-er
	<u>-end</u>	:	*vinnig - maak		-END(e)	
			fast		make	-ing
	<u>ge-</u>	:	vinnig - GE- maak(te)			
			fast		-ed	make
			(= "fast-made")			

(ix) Patient

(1034)	<i>dat</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>slagter</i>	<i>wors</i>	<i>maak</i>	
	that	the	butcher	sausage	makes	
	<u>-er</u>	:	wors - maak		-ER	
			sausage		make	-er
	<u>-end</u>	:	*wors - maak		-END(e)	
			sausage		make	-ing
	<u>ge-</u>	:	*wors - GE- maak(te)			
			sausage		-ed	make
			(= "sausage-made")			

(x) Source

(1035) *dat sy 'n rok van sy maak*
 that she a dress from silk makes

-er : **(van =) sy - maak -ER*
 (from) silk make -er

-end : **(van =) sy - maak -END(e)*
 (from) silk make -ing

ge- : **(van =) sy - GE- maak(te)*
 (from) silk -ed make
 (= "(from) silk-made")

(xi) Temporal

(1036) *dat die kok kos in die oggend maak*
 that the cook food in the morning makes

-er : **(in=die=)oggend - maak -ER*
 (in the) morning make -er

-end : **(in=die=)oggend - maak -END(e)*
 (in the) morning make -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)oggend - GE- maak(te)*
 (in the) morning -ed make
 (= "(in the) morning-made")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(1037) **dat die man maak*
 that the man makes

-er : **man - maak -ER*
 man make -er

-end : **man - maak -END(e)*
 man make -ing

ge- : **man - GE- maak(te)*
 man -ed make
 (= "man-made")

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(1038) *dat die ontwerper klere maak*
 that the designer clothes makes

-er : *klere - maak -ER*
 clothes make -er

-end : **klere - maak -END(e)*
 clothes make -ing

ge- : **klere - GE- maak(te)*
 clothes -ed make
 (= "clothes-made")

2.4.3.8 rook ("smoke")

Simple derivations: *rook -ER*
 smoke -er (= "smoker")
rook -END(e)
 smoke -ing (= "smoking")
GE- rook(te)
 -ed smoke (= "smoked")

a. Syntactic categories

(i) Nouns

(1039) *dat die vissers snoek rook*
 that the fishermen snoek smoke

-er : *snoek - rook -ER*
 snoek smoke -er

-end : *snoek - rook -END(e)*
 snoek smoke -ing

ge- : **snoek - GE- rook(te)*
 snoek -ed smoke
 (= "snoek-smoked")

(1040) *dat die slagter ham rook*
 that the butcher ham smokes

-er : ham - rook -ER
 ham smoke -er

-end : ham - rook -END(e)
 ham smoke -ing

ge- : *ham - GE- rook(te)
 ham -ed smoke
 (= "ham-smoked")

(ii) Noun phrases

(1041) dat die mense soms vars vis rook
 that the people sometimes fresh fish smoke

-er : vars =vis - rook -ER
 fresh fish smoke -er

-end : vars =vis - rook -END(e)
 fresh fish smoke -ing

ge- : *vars =vis - GE- rook(te)
 fresh fish -ed smoke
 (= "fresh fish-smoked")

(iii) Adjectives

(1042) dat Jan die wors rou rook
 that Jan the sausage raw smokes

-er : *rou - rook -ER
 raw smoke -er

-end : *rou - rook -END(e)
 raw smoke -ing

ge- : ?rou - GE- rook(te)
 raw -ed smoke
 (= "raw-smoked")

(iv) Adverbs

(1043) dat die slagter ham herhaaldelik rook
 that the butcher ham repeatedly smokes

-er : *herhaaldelik - rook -ER
 repeatedly smoke -er

-end : *herhaalidelik - rook -END(e)
 repeatedly smoke -ing

ge- : *herhaalidelik - GE- rook(te)
 repeatedly -ed smoke
 (= "repeatedly-smoked")

(v) Prepositional phrases

(1044) dat Koos ham altyd met saagsels rook
 that Koos ham always with wood shavings smokes

-er : (met =) *saagsels - rook -ER
 (with) wood shavings smoke -er

-end : (met =) *saagsels - rook -END(e)
 (with) wood shavings smoke -ing

ge- : (met =) *saagsels - GE- rook(te)
 (with) wood shavings -ed smoke
 (= "(with) wood shavings-smoked")

b. Grammatical functions

(i) Subject

(1045) *dat die vissers rook
 that the fishermen smoke

-er : *vissers - rook -ER
 fishermen smoke -er

-end : *vissers - rook -END(e)
 fishermen smoke -ing

ge- : *vissers - GE- rook(te)
 fishermen -ed smoke
 (= "fishermen-smoked")

(ii) Direct object

(1046) dat die vissers snoek rook
 that the fishermen snoek smoke

-er : snoek - rook -ER
 snoek smoke -er

-end : snoek - rook -END(e)
snoek smoke -ing

ge- : *snoek - GE- rook(te)
snoek -ed smoke
(= "snoek-smoked")

(1047) *dat die slagter die ham rook*
that the butcher the ham smokes

-er : ham - rook -ER
ham smoke -er

-end : ham - rook -END(e)
ham smoke -ing

ge- : *ham - GE- rook(te)
ham -ed smoke
(= "ham-smoked")

(iii) Indirect object

(1048) *dat die vissers snoek vir die mark rook*
that the fishermen snoek for the market smoke

-er : (vir=die=)*mark - rook -ER
(for the) market smoke -er

-end : (vir=die=)*mark - rook -END(e)
(for the) market smoke -ing

ge- : (vir=die=)*mark - GE- rook(te)
(for the) market -ed smoke
(= "(for the) market-smoked")

(iv) Non-term (PP)

(1049) *dat die vissers snoek met saagsels rook*
that the fishermen snoek with wood shavings smoke

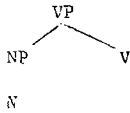
-er : (met =)*saagsels - rook -ER
(with) wood shavings smoke -er

-end : (met =)*saagsels - rook -END(e)
(with) wood shavings smoke -ing

ge- : (met =)*saagsels GE- rook(te)
(with) wood shavings -ed smoke
(= "(with) wood shavings-smoked")

c. Structural adjacency

(i)



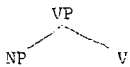
(1050) *dat die slagter wors rook*
 that the butcher sausage smokes

-er : *wors - rook -ER*
 sausage smoke -er

-end : *wors - rook -END(e)*
 sausage smoke -ing

ge- : **wors - GE- rook(te)*
 sausage -ed smoke
 (= "sausage-smoked")

(ii)



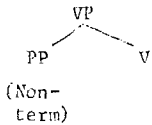
(1051) *dat die vissers vars vis rook*
 that the fishermen fresh fish smoke

-er : *vars =vis - rook -ER*
 fresh fish smoke -er

-end : *vars =vis - rook -END(e)*
 fresh fish smoke -ing

ge- : **vars =vis - GE- rook(te)*
 fresh fish -ed smoke
 (= "fresh fish-smoked")

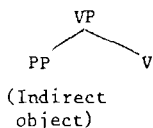
(iii)



(1052) *dat die vissers die snoek met saagsels rook*
 that the fishermen the snoek with wood shavings smoke

- er : (met =)*saagsels - rook -ER
(with) wood shavings smoke -er
- end : (met =)*saagsels - rook -END(e)
(with) wood shavings smoke -ing
- ge- : (met =)*saagsels - GE- rook(te)
(with) wood shavings -ed smoke
(= "(with) wood shavings-smoked")

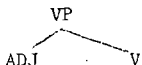
(iv)



- (1053) dat hulle vis vir die mark rook
that they fish for the market smoke

- er : (vir=die=)*mark - rook -ER
(for the) market smoke -er
- end : (vir=die=)*mark - rook -END(e)
(for the) market smoke -ing
- ge- : (vir=die=)*mark - GE- rook(te)
(for the) market -ed smoke
(= "(for the) market-smoked")

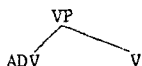
(v)



- (1054) dat die mense wors rou rook
that the people sausage raw smoke

- er : *rou - rook -ER
raw smoke -er
- end : *rou - rook -END(e)
raw smoke -ing
- ge- : ?rou - GE- rook(te)
raw -ed smoke
(= "raw-smoked")

(vi)



(1055) *dat die slagter ham herhaaldelik rook*
 that the butcher ham repeatedly smokes

-er : *herhaaldelik - rook -ER
 repeatedly smoke -er

-end : *herhaaldelik - rook -END(e)
 repeatedly smoke -ing

ge- : *herhaaldelik - GE- rook(te)
 repeatedly -ed smoke
 (= "repeatedly-smoked")

d. Thematic relations

(i) Accompaniment

(1056) *dat die slagter die wors saam met die*
 that the butcher the sausage together with the
ham rook
 ham smokes

-er : *saam = met =die=ham - rook -ER
 together with the ham smoke -er

-end : *saam = met =die=ham - rook -END(e)
 together with the ham smoke -ing

ge- : saam = met =die=ham - GE- rook(te)
 together with the ham -ed smoke
 (= "together with the ham-smoked")

(ii) Agent

(1057) *dat die vissers die vis rook om dit te ver-*
 that the fishermen the fish smoke to it pre-
duursaam
 serve

-er : *vissers - rook -ER
 fishermen smoke -er

-end : *vissers - rook -END(e)
 fishermen smoke -ing

ge- : *vissers - GE- rook(te)
 fishermen -ed smoke
 (= "fishermen-smoked")

(iii) Benefactive

(1058) *dat die vissers vis vir die mark rook*
 that the fishermen fish for the market smoke

-er : (vir=die=)*mark - rook -ER
 (for the) market smoke -er

-end : (vir=die=)*mark - rook -END(e)
 (for the) market smoke -ing

ge- : (vir=die=)*mark - GE- rook(te)
 (for the) market -ed smoke
 (= "(for the) market-smoked")

(iv) Duration

(1059) *dat Jan die ham vir 'n uur rook*
 that Jan the ham for an hour smokes

-er : *(vir= 'n=)uur - rook -ER
 (for an) hour smoke -er

-end : *(vir= 'n=)uur - rook -END(e)
 (for an) hour smoke -ing

ge- : (vir= 'n=)*uur - GE- rook(te)
 (for an) hour -ed smoke
 (= "(for an) hour-smoked")

(v) Goal

(1060) *dat hulle snoek vir uitvoer rook*
 that they snoek for export smoke

-er : (vir=)*uitvoer - rook -ER
 (for) export smoke -er

-end : (vir=)*uitvoer - rook -END(e)
 (for) export smoke -ing

ge- : (vir=)*uitvoer - GE- rook(te)
 (for) export -ed smoke
 (= "(for) export-smoked")

(vi) Instrument

(1061) *dat die slagter die ham met saagsels rook*
 that the butcher the ham with wood shavings smoke

-er : (met=)*saagsels - rook -ER
 (with) wood shavings smoke -er

-end : (met=)*saagsels - rook -END(e)
 (with) wood shavings smoke -ing

ge- : (met=)*saagsels - GE- rook(te)
 (with) wood shavings -ed smoke
 (= "(with) wood shavings-smoked")

(vii) Location

(1062) *dat die vissers die snoek op die boot rook*
 that the fishermen the snook on the boat smoke

-er : *(op=die=)boot - rook -ER
 (on the) boat smoke -er

-end : *(op=die=)boot - rook -END(e)
 (on the) boat smoke -ing

ge- : (op=die=)*boot - GE- rook(te)
 (on the) boat -ed smoke
 (= "(on the) boat-smoked")

(viii) Modality

(1063) *dat die vissers die snoek herhaaldelik rook*
 that the fishermen the snook repeatedly smoke

-er : *herhaaldelik - rook -ER
 repeatedly smoke -er

-end : *herhaaldelik - rook -END(e)
 repeatedly smoke -ing

ge- : *herhaaldelik - GE- rook(te)
 repeatedly -ed smoke
 (= "repeatedly-smoked")

(ix) Patient

(1064) *dat die slagter ham rook*
 that the butcher ham smokes

-er : ham - rook -ER
 ham smoke -er

-end : ham - rook -END(e)
 ham smoke -ing

ge- : *ham - GE- rook(te)
 ham -ed smoke
 (= "ham-smoked")

(x) Source

(1065) *dat die slagter ham van die distrik rook*
 that the butcher ham of the district smokes

-er : *(van=die=)distrik - rook -ER
 (of the) district smoke -er

-end : *(van=die=)distrik - rook -END(e)
 (of the) district smoke -ing

ge- : *(van=die=)distrik - GE- rook(te)
 (of the) district -ed smoke
 (= "(of the) district-smoked")

(xi) Temporality

(1066) *dat die vissers vis in die nag rook*
 that the fishermen fish in the night smoke

-er : *(in=die=)nag - rook -ER
 (in the) night smoke -er

-end : *(in=die=)nag - rook -END(e)
 (in the) night smoke -ing

ge- : *(in=die=)*nag - GE- rook(te)
 (in the) night -ed smoke
 (= "(in the) night-smoked")

(xii) Theme₁ (Subject of intransitive verb)

(1067)	<i>*dat</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>slagter</i>	<i>rook</i>	
	that	the	butcher	smokes	
	<u>-er</u>	:	<i>*slagter</i>	- <i>rook</i>	-EP
			butcher	smoke	-er
	<u>-end</u>	:	<i>*slagter</i>	- <i>rook</i>	-END(e)
			butcher	smoke	-ing
	<u>ge-</u>	:	<i>*slagter</i>	- GE- <i>rook</i>	(te)
			butcher	-ed	smoke
			(= "butcher-smoked")		

(xiii) Theme₂ (Direct object of transitive verb)

(1068)	<i>dat</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>vissers</i>	<i>snoek</i>	<i>rook</i>
	that	the	fishermen	snoek	smokes
	<u>-er</u>	:	<i>snoek</i>	- <i>rook</i>	-EP
			snoek	smoke	-er
	<u>-end</u>	:	<i>snoek</i>	- <i>rook</i>	-END(e)
			snoek	smoke	-ing
	<u>ge-</u>	:	<i>*snoek</i>	- GE- <i>rook</i>	(te)
			snoek	-ed	smoke
			(= "snoek-smoked")		

3. Summary

In the tables (1069-1072) below the generalizations made in §§2.1.2, 2.2.2, 2.3.2, and 2.4.2 above are summarized with a view to comparing the behavior of the different classes of verbs in the derivation of synthetic compounds.

Table (1069) is a summary of the generalizations regarding the incorporation of syntactic categories, table (1070) summarizes the generalizations about the incorporation of grammatical functions, table (1071) summarizes the generalizations that have been made about the role of structural adjacency, and table (1072) is a summary of the generalizations about the incorporation of some thematic relations.

SYNTACTIC CATEGORIES

(1069)

Incorporated syntactic category	Affix	Category I	Category II		Category III			Category IV
		Zero-morph verbs	Intransitive verbs	+ "bare" object	without object	Optional double object verbs	Dative Movement	Non-Dative Movement
N	-er	productive	unproductive		productive			productive
	-enā	productive	unproductive		productive			productive
	ge-							
NP	-er	fairly productive	unproductive					unproductive
	-enā	fairly productive						unproductive
	ge-							
ADJ	-er							
	-enā		unproductive					
	ge-	fairly productive	fairly productive		productive			fairly productive
ADV	-er	unproductive	unproductive				unproductive	
	-enā	fairly productive	productive				unproductive	unproductive
	ge-	fairly productive					unproductive	fairly productive
PP	-er	productive	productive		fairly productive			
	-enā	productive	productive		fairly productive			
	ge-	fairly productive			productive			fairly productive

(1070)

GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS

Incorporated Grammatical function	Affix	Category I Zero-morph verbs	Category II Intransitive verbs		Category III Optional double object verbs			Category IV Obligatory transitive verbs
			+ "bare" object	without object	Dative Movement	Non-Dative Movement	Complex Dative Movement	
Subject	-er							
	-end							
	ge-	fairly productive						
Direct object	-er	productive			productive			productive
	-end	productive			productive			productive
	ge-							
Indirect object	-er	fairly productive	unproductive		unproductive		unproductive	unproductive
	-end	fairly productive	unproductive		unproductive		unproductive	unproductive
	ge-	fairly productive			productive			unproductive
Non-term (pp)	-er	productive	productive			unproductive		
	-end	productive	productive			unproductive		
	ge-	fairly productive			productive			fairly productive
"Bare" object	-er		fairly productive					
	-end		fairly productive					
	ge-							

STRUCTURAL ADJACENCY

(1071)		STRUCTURAL ADJACENCY						
Structure of the VP	Affix	Category I	Category II		Category III			Category IV
		Zero-morph verbs	+ "bare" object	Without object	Dative Movement	Non-Dative Movement	Complex Dative Movement	Obligatory transitive verbs
<pre> graph TD VP --> NP VP --> V </pre>	-en	productive			productive			productive
	-end	productive			productive			productive
	ge-							
<pre> graph TD VP --> NP VP --> V </pre>	-en	fairly productive						unproductive
	-end	fairly productive						unproductive
	ge-							
<pre> graph TD VP --> NP VP --> V </pre> bare" object	-en		fairly productive					
	-end		fairly productive					
	ge-							
<pre> graph TD VP --> PP VP --> V </pre> (Non-term)	-en	productive	productive				unproductive	unproductive
	-end	productive		productive			unproductive	unproductive
	ge-						productive	fairly productive
<pre> graph TD VP --> PP VP --> V </pre> (Indirect object)	-en	fairly productive	unproductive		unproductive		unproductive	unproductive
	-end	fairly productive	unproductive		unproductive		unproductive	unproductive
	ge-	fairly productive					productive	fairly productive
<pre> graph TD VP --> ADJ VP --> V </pre>	-en							
	-end		unproductive					
	ge-	fairly productive	fairly productive				productive	fairly productive
<pre> graph TD VP --> ADV VP --> V </pre>	-en	fairly productive	unproductive				unproductive	
	-end	fairly productive	fairly productive				unproductive	
	ge-	fairly productive	unproductive				unproductive	fairly productive

(1072)

THEMATIC RELATIONS

Incorporated thematic relation	Affix	Category I	Category II		Category III			Category IV
		Zero-morph verbs	+ "bare" object	Without object	Optional double object verbs			Obligatory transitive verbs
					Dative Movement	Non-Dative Movement	Complex Dative Movement	
Accompaniment	-er		fairly productive					
	-end		fairly productive					
	ge-	fairly productive				fairly productive		fairly productive
Agent	-er							
	-end							
	ge-	fairly productive						
Benefactive	-er	fairly productive	fairly productive		unproductive		unproductive	unproductive
	-end	fairly productive	fairly productive		unproductive		unproductive	unproductive
	ge-	fairly productive				productive		fairly productive
Duration	-er							
	-end							
	ge-	fairly productive				fairly productive		fairly productive
Goal	-er	fairly productive	fairly productive					unproductive
	-end	fairly productive	fairly productive					unproductive
	ge-	fairly productive				productive		fairly productive
Instrument	-er	fairly productive	fairly productive					unproductive
	-end	fairly productive	fairly productive					unproductive
	ge-	fairly productive				fairly productive		fairly productive
Location	-er	fairly productive	productive			unproductive		unproductive
	-end	fairly productive	productive			unproductive		unproductive
	ge-	fairly productive				fairly productive		fairly productive
Modality	-er	fairly productive	fairly productive					unproductive
	-end	fairly productive	fairly productive					unproductive
	ge-	fairly productive	unproductive			fairly productive		fairly productive
Patient	-er	productive				productive		productive
	-end	productive				productive		productive
	ge-							
Source	-er	fairly productive						unproductive
	-end	fairly productive						unproductive
	ge-	fairly productive	fairly productive			fairly productive		fairly productive
Temporality	-er	fairly productive	fairly productive					unproductive
	-end	fairly productive	fairly productive					unproductive
	ge-	fairly productive				fairly productive		fairly productive
Thematic relation x	-er		fairly productive					
	-end		fairly productive					
	ge-							
Theme ₁	-er							
	-end							
	ge-	fairly productive						
Theme ₂	-er	productive				productive		productive
	-end	productive				productive		productive
	ge-							

A comparison of the tables (1069)-(1072) reveals an interesting phenomenon. It appears that *ge-* prefixation behaves quite exceptionally in that synthetic compounds prefixed by *ge-* can be formed by incorporating an adjective or a subject of a deep structure phrase. This has at least two problematic consequences for a theory of synthetic compounding which takes deep structure phrases to be the bases of synthetic compounds:

- a. Given that Afrikaans synthetic compounds must have as their bases syntactic deep structures which are generated by independently motivated base rules, and given that adjectives can be incorporated in synthetic compounds prefixed by *ge-*, then (1073) will have to be a base rule of Afrikaans.

(1073) NP \rightarrow N ADJ

However, (1073) plays no role in the generation of ordinary syntactic phrases and can therefore not be accepted as a base rule of Afrikaans.

- b. Given the Contiguity Constraint proposed by Botha (1980:92), it will not be possible to explain the incorporation of the subject in synthetic compounds prefixed by *ge-*.

The problems posed by the exceptional properties of synthetic compounds prefixed by *ge-* in Afrikaans must somehow be solved. It could, for instance, turn out that the *ge-* forms are not even synthetic compounds at all.¹¹⁾ However, it is not the aim of this paper to suggest solutions to problems such as those formulated in a. and b. above.

APPENDIX

The thematic relations

Accompaniment

According to Gruber (1976:71), one of the nonmotional senses of prepositions with motional verbs is the expression of accompaniment.

Example:

(1074) John flew the kite ahead of him.

In (1074) the sense may be that John was moving, maintaining the kite ahead of him.

Agent

According to Jackendoff (1972:32), the Agent NP is identified by a semantic reading which attributes to the NP will or volition toward the action expressed by the sentence. Only animate NPs can function as agents.

Example:

(1075) John took the book from Bill in order to read it.

In (1075) John is the Agent.

According to Booij et al. (1975:21), the Agent NP causes something to happen which involves some kind of change.

Benefactive

This is the thematic relation associated with the NP expressing the receiver in a sentence with a verb of motion. This NP is the indirect object of the sentence.

Example:

(1076) John gives the book to Mary.

In (1076) the thematic relation associated with Mary is that of Benefactive.

Duration

According to Gruber (1976:50-51) the thematic relation of Duration is associated with an element indicating that the action depicted lasts longer than an instant. The verbs which are used necessarily imply that the action lasted at least from one instant to another, for some finite length of time.

Example:

(1077) John kept the book for two months.

In (1077), for two months expresses the thematic relation of Duration.

Goal

According to Jackendoff (1972:29), Goal is the thematic relation associated with the NP expressing the goal in a sentence with a verb of motion.

Example:

(1078) Bill forced the rock into the hole.

In (1078), hole is the Goal.

Instrument

According to Booij et al. (1975:90), the thematic relation of Instrument is expressed by the lifeless force or lifeless object which is involved in the act or the state expressed by the verb.

Example:

(1079) He cuts the bread with a knife.

In (1079), a knife is the Instrument.

Location

According to Jackendoff (1972:31), Location is the thematic relation associated with the NP expressing the location in a sentence with a verb of location.

Example:

(1080) John stayed in the room.

In (1080) in the room is the Location.

Modality

According to Booij et al. (1975:106-107), the relation between the speaker and what he says is established by means of certain modal elements such as "probably", "certainly", etc. These elements express the speaker's approach to the reality of what he says in the non-modal part of the sentence.

Example:

(1081) The girl sings well.

In (1081) well expresses Modality.

Patient

The thematic relation expressed by the direct object-NP of a transitive verb is that of Patient.

Example:

(1082) John kicks the ball.

In (1082) the ball is the Patient.

Source

According to Jackendoff (1972:31), the thematic relation associated with the NP expressing the source in a sentence with a verb of motion.

Example:

(1083) Charlie bought the lamp from Max.

In (1083) Max is the Source.

According to Booij et al. (1975:36), Source is the thematic relation which indicates the position from which something moves.

Temporality

Temporality is the thematic relation associated with the NP expressing the time in a sentence.

Example:

(1084) Most people sleep at night.

In (1084), at night expresses the thematic relation of Temporality.

Thematic relation x

The thematic relation associated with the NP which is the "bare" object of a sentence, is the Thematic relation x.

Example:

(1085) *Jan loop ʔ kortpad.*
Jan walks a shortcut.

In (1085) *ʔ kortpad* bears the Thematic Relation x to the action expressed by the sentence.

Theme

According to Jackendoff (1972:29-30), the Theme is defined as the NP understood as undergoing the motion in the case of verbs of motion,

e.g.

(1086) The rock moved away.

In (1086), the rock is the Theme.

With verbs of location, the Theme is defined as the NP of which the location is being asserted,

e.g.

(1087) The rock stood in the corner.

In (1087), the rock is the Theme.

A distinction is made between (i) Theme₁, which is the relation expressed by the subject of intransitive verbs, and (ii) Theme₂, which is the relation expressed by the direct object of a transitive verb.

NOTES

1. A brief characterization of each class of verbs will be given in §2 where the various classes of verbs are discussed individually.
2. Due to a lack of space, the English translations of the Afrikaans synthetic compounds will not be given in the tables. The reader is referred to the analyses of the individual verbs for the translations.
3. The use of the notions "productive", "fairly productive" and "unproductive" requires some clarification. The notion "productive", as used in the generalizations regarding the possibility of incorporating various constituents in synthetic compounds, formed on the basis of a fixed number of individually analyzed verbs in each verb category/class, indicates that a given constituent may be incorporated in the case of all, or nearly all, of the verbs that were considered in that category. The notion "fairly productive" implies that a given constituent may be incorporated in the case of more or less fifty percent of the verbs that were considered in any particular class. The notion "unproductive" implies that a given constituent may be incorporated in the case of only one or two of the verbs that were considered in a particular category.
4. The generalizations regarding string adjacency are not presented in the form of a table. However, it appears from the analyses of the individual verbs that there are no cases where a constituent which is separated from the verb by another constituent may be incorporated in a verbal compound. This generalization, as well as the generalizations regarding structural adjacency, is expressed by the Contiguity Constraint in (Botha 1980).
5. Botha (1980:67) proposes the following Affixation Hypothesis to account for the formation of Afrikaans synthetic compounds: "the rules by means of which Afrikaans synthetic compounds are formed on the basis of deep structure phrases are affixation rules which (i) are also used for the formation of simple derived words, and which (ii) apply in accordance with proper constraints". It follows from the Affixation Hypothesis that, if it is impossible to form a simple derived word on the basis of a verb X and an affix Y, it will also be impossible to form a synthetic compound on the basis of the verb X, the affix Y and an additional constituent Z. Thus, because the acceptability of the simple derived word *?draende* is dubious, the prediction is that the acceptability of synthetic compounds such as *?kind-draende* will be dubious, which is indeed the case. This prediction of the Affixation Hypothesis is formulated as follows by Botha (1980:88):

- "(38) Every restriction which limits the productivity of an affixation rule in the formation of simple derived words will also apply to the rule in the formation of Afrikaans synthetic compounds."
6. The notion "'bare' object" was discussed on p. 2.
 7. In the case of *stuurder* the affix is *-er* and not *-der*. The insertion of [d] is an allomorphic change which occurs both in simple derived words (e.g. *stuurder*) and synthetic compounds (e.g. *pakkie-stuurder*).
 8. In Afrikaans, *GE-* cannot attach to verbs such as *vertaal* ("translate"), *vertel* ("tell"), *besit* ("own") and *besoek* ("visit"), which are prefixed by *ver-* and *be-* respectively. Thus, although the abstract form of the derived forms *vertelde* and *besoekte*, for example, are *GE-vertel(de)* and *GE-besoek(te)* respectively, the *GE-* is not realized in the surface structure.
 9. In the case of *skrywer* and *skrywende*, the voiceless fricative [f] changes to the voiced fricative [v] when the affixes *-er* and *-end* are attached. This allomorphic change occurs both in simple derived words (e.g. *skrywer*) and in synthetic compounds (e.g. *roman-skrywer*).
 10. Where no indication is given as to the nature of the PP (i.e. whether it is a non-term or an indirect object), it is implied that both a non-term and an indirect object may be incorporated in synthetic compounds.
 11. Cf. Botha 1980:136-138 for a discussion of the *ge-* forms.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Akmajian, Adrian, and Frank Heny
1975 An introduction to the principles of transformational syntax. Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press.
- Bach, Emmon
1974 Syntactic Theory. New York, etc.: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Inc.
- Booij, G.E., J.G. Kerstens, H.J. Verkooyl
1975 Lexicon van de taalwetenschap. Utrecht/Antwerpen: Uitgeverij Het Spectrum.
- Botha, Rudolf P.
1980 Word-based morphology and synthetic compounding.
(= Stellenbosch Papers in Linguistics, nr. 5).
- Gruber, Jeffrey S.
1976 Lexical structures in syntax and semantics. Amsterdam, etc.: North-Holland Publishing Company.
- Jackendoff, Ray S.
1972 Semantic interpretation in generative grammar. Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press.
- Roeper, Thomas, and Muffy Siegel
1978 "A lexical transformation for verbal compounds",
Linguistic Inquiry, Vol. 9:199-260.